# Kaltura Management Console (KMC) User Manual

Version: Falcon



#### Kaltura Business Headquarters

5 Union Square West, Suite 602, New York, NY, 10003, USA Tel.: +1 800 871 5224

Copyright © 2012 Kaltura Inc. All Rights Reserved. Designated trademarks and brands are the property of their respective owners. Use of this document constitutes acceptance of the Kaltura Terms of Use and Privacy Policy.

# Contents

Preface	
About this Manual	
Audience	11
Document Conventions	11
Related Documentation	
Chapter 1 KMC Overview	
What Can I Do with the KMC?	
Media Management and Workflow	
Widget and Application Studio	
Getting Started	14
Chapter 2 Uploading and Ingestion	
What is a Kaltura Entry?	
Browser-based Ingestion	
The Kaltura Uploader	
The Upload Tab	
Upload Media	
Upload from Desktop	
Record from a Webcam	
Import from Web	
Prepare Entry	
Prepare Video/Audio Entry	
Prepare Live Stream Entry	
Creating Draft Entries	
Key Benefits and Functionality	
Hosting Videos at your Preferred Location and Linking to Kaltura	
Replacing Video Assets for a Kaltura Entry	
Uploading and Modifying Related Files	
Bulk Upload and FTP Upload	
What is Bulk Upload?	
Entries XML Bulk Upload	
Submit Bulk Options	
Downloading Bulk File Samples	
Automated Content Ingestion via a Drop Folder	
Using a Drop Folder	
Drop Folder Control Panel	
The Dashboard Tab	
Uploading Content Using the Content Tab	

Tracking Your Uploads	
Your Uploads	
Bulk Upload Log	
Chapter 3 Transcoding and Processing	
Converting Videos into Multiple Flavors (Optimized Output Files)	
Editing and Creating Transcoding Profiles	
Adding a Transcoding Profile	
Quick Publishing	
Editing Options for Flavors in a Transcoding Profile	
Assigning a Transcoding Profile to a Bulk Upload	
Useful Tips for Working with Transcoding Profiles	
The Flavors Tab	
Add Video/Audio	
Upload Files	
Import Files	
Link to Remote Storage	
Match Files from Drop Folder	
Replacing Media	
Supported Source Formats	
Supported Source Codecs	
Target Formats/Codecs	45
Chapter 4 Creating and Customizing Playlists and Players	
What is a Playlist?	
Playlists Tab	
Creating a Manual Playlist	
Creating a Rule Based Playlist	
Defining a Rule	
Multiple Rules Based Playlist - Advanced Mode	
Additional Playlist Configuration	
Creating a Player with Multi-tab Playlists	
Deleting a Playlist	53
Removing Videos from a Playlist	53
Customizing Additional Features for Playlists	
Designing and Configuring a Player	
Player List	
Select the Type of Player	
Configuring the Player Basics Settings	
Editing a Player	
Adding Content to a Player	
Duplicating a Player	
Deleting a Player	57

508-Compliant Video Player	57
Configuring the Player Advertising Settings	
Configuring the Player Features	
Features List	
Configuring the Player Style	67
Chapter 5 Managing Metadata	68
Entry Metadata	
Types of Metadata	68
Metadata Actions	
Uploading Content and Setting Metadata	69
Upload a Media File and Set Its Metadata	
Ingest a Media File Bundled with Metadata (CSV, XML, API)	70
Prepare a Metadata-only "Draft" Entry for Future Ingestion of Media Files	71
Metadata and Related Files	71
Kaltura Custom Metadata Functionality	71
Managing Schemas	73
Adding a Schema	73
Adding Custom Data Fields	74
Setting Values for Custom Metadata Fields - Per Entry	75
Setting Values for Metadata Fields - Per Category	77
Related Videos Gallery	78
Related Videos Source	79
Configure Autoplay for Related Videos	79
Chapter 6 Locating Content in the KMC	81
Searching Through Entries	
Filtering Content in the Entries Table	
Using Categories as Filters	
Using Additional Filters	
Performing a Search Based on Metadata Fields	83
Entries Table Filter Indications	84
Searching Through Categories	
Filtering Categories in the Categories Table	
Using Categories as Filters	
Using Additional Filters	
Categories Table Filter Indications	
Searching Playlists	
Chapter 7 Managing Access Control Profiles	
Access Control Profiles	
Creating an Access Profile	
Editing an Access Profile	90
Restricting Domains	91

Restricting Countries for Viewing	
Restricting Views by IP Address	
Restricting Views with a Kaltura Session	
Pay-Per-View	
Assigning an Access Control Profile to an Entry	
Assigning an Access Profile to a Bulk Upload	
Content Scheduling	
Chapter 8 Managing Content Entitlement	
Kaltura's Entitlement Model	
Category's Entitlements Tab	
Setting the Entitlement Settings	
Content Privacy	
Visibility of Content Associated with Multiple Categories	
Visibility of Content in Outside of the Application	
Category Listing	
Contribution Policy	
Specific End-User Permissions	
Managing Categories' Specific End-User Permissions	
Bulk Actions for Managing Categories Specific End-User Permissions	
Additional Category Entitlement Settings	
Chapter 9 Managing Categories	
Defining and Assigning Entry Categories	
Categories Table	
Adding/Editing a Specific Category	
Adding Metadata to a Category	
Editing the Entitlement Settings of a Category	
Reordering Sub Categories	
Editing Multiple Categories in Bulk	
Add Tags to Categories	
Remove Tags from Categories	
Move Categories	
Change Content Privacy	
Change Contribution Policy	
Change Category Listing	
Change Category Owner	
Delete Categories	
Updating Categories' State	
Chapter 10 KMC Users and Roles	
Roles and Permissions	
Adding a User	
Editing a User	

Deleting and Blocking Users	
Purchasing a License for Additional Users	
Creating Custom Roles	
Role Management	
Chapter 11 Moderation and Editorial Workflows	124
Content Moderation Workflows	
The Moderation Tab	
Previewing Content using the Moderation Tab	
Rejecting Content using the Moderation Tab	
Chapter 12 Using Subtitles and Captions	
Caption File Types	
Searching within Captions	
Subtitles and Captions Terminology	
Adding Captions to an Entry	
Editing a Captions File	
Setting Up Captions for Display	
Viewing an Entry with Captions in a Player	
Captions Options	
Chapter 13 Live Streaming	
Live Streaming Using the KMC	
Workflow for Setting up Live Streaming	
Setting up the Hardware and Software	
Creating a Live Streaming Entry in the KMC	
Multiple Bitrate Encoding	
Configuring the Live Stream Parameters in the KMC	
Setting up the Broadcasting Computer	137
Viewing the Broadcasting Setup (Optional)	
Advanced Live Streaming Configuration Options	
Chapter 14 Content Authoring Tools	141
The Content Tab	141
Entries Tab	141
Entries Table	141
Set Scheduling	
Set Access Control	
Edit - Add Tags to and Entry	
Edit - Remove Tags from an Entry	
Edit - Add Categories	
Edit - Remove Categories	
Add to New Category	
Add to New Playlist	
Change Entry Owner	

Download Files	
Delete Multiple Entries	148
Preview and Embed	149
Editing Entries	149
Edit Entry Tabs	
Clipping and Trimming Media Files	151
Troubleshooting Trimming and Clipping	
Users Tab	
Choosing a Thumbnail for your Video	
Chapter 15 Publishing to your Site	156
Embedding a Player with a Single Entry on your Site	
Embedding a Player with a Playlist on your Site	
Video Delivery Settings	
HTTP Progressive Download Delivery	
Adaptive Streaming RTMP Delivery with Adaptive Bitrate	161
Secure Transport RTMPE	
Akamai HD Network – Allows adaptive bit-rate	
Adding the Flavor Selector Module	
Mobile Support	
Chapter 16 Distribution and Syndication	
Kaltura Distribution Module	
Key Benefits:	
How Does Distribution Work?	
Adding a Distributor to an Entry	
Scheduling a Video Package	
Validating a Video Package	
Removing a Distributor from a Video Package	
Managing Distributor Details	
Content Syndication	
How Does Syndication Work?	
Syndicating to a Standard MRSS Feed (Yahoo)	
Search Engine Optimization (SEO)	
Key benefits	
Setting Up Syndication	
Syndicating to Google	
Google Webmaster Tasks	
KMC Publisher Tasks for Google Syndication	
Syndicating to TubeMogul	
KMC Publisher Tasks for TubeMogul Syndication	
TubeMogul Webmaster Tasks	
Syndicating to iTunes	

KMC Publisher Tasks for iTunes Syndication	
Syndicating to Yahoo	
KMC Publisher Tasks for Yahoo Syndication	
Yahoo Webmaster Tasks	
Flexible Feed Format	
Chapter 17 Advertising and Ad Networks	
Overview of Advertising with Kaltura	
Player Branding	
Connecting with an Ad Server	
Kaltura Player and Ad Plugins	
Supported Ad Servers	
Ad Terminology	
Creating Kaltura Video Ads	
Adding the VAST Ad Server	
Configuring VAST Ads	
Configuring VAST Pre-roll Ads	
Configuring VAST Post Rolls	
Adding a Midroll	
Adding an Overlay	
Creating Bumper Ads	
Configuring Third Party Ad Plugins	
Tremor Media	
Tremor Media Added Functionality	
AdapTV	
Configuring Companion Ads	
Companion Ads in HTML	
Companion Ads in Flash	
Targeting with an Ad Server	
Targeting per Viewer	
Ad Targeting via ad plugin	
Ad Targeting with Tremor	
Advertising for Mobile Devices	210
DFP	
AdapTV (via VAST)	
Connecting with Ad Servers and Networks via adap.tv	
Connecting with Tremor Media	
Different Types of Ad Servers	215
Kaltura Player Additions Related to Ads	
Troubleshooting	215
Chapter 18 Creating and Tracking Analytics	218
Content Reports	218

Top Content Reports	218
Specific Entry Report	
Content Drop-off Reports	221
Specific Entry Content Drop-off Reports	
Content Interactions Reports	
Specific Content Interactions Report	
Content Contributions Report	
Specific Entry Media Source Contributions Report	
User and Community Reports	
Top Contributors Report	
Geographic Distribution Reports	
Top Syndications	
Specific Syndicator Reports	231
User Engagement Reports	231
Specific User Engagement Report	
Bandwidth Usage Reports	233
Publisher Bandwidth and Storage Report	233
End Users Storage Report	234
Storage Report for a Specific User	235
Date Ranges for Analytical Reports	236
Exporting Analytics to a CSV File	237
Sending Analytics Events to Third Parties	237
Kaltura Player Supported Plug-ins	237
.Chapter 19 Account Information	238
Account Settings	
Integration Settings	239
Account Info	
Entitlement Settings	240
Notifications	242
Access Control	243
Transcoding Settings	243
Custom Data	243
My User Settings	243
Account Upgrade	

# Preface

This preface contains the following topics:

- About this Manual
- Audience
- Document Conventions
- Related Documentation

### **About this Manual**

This document provides an in-depth description of the KMC basic concepts and usage.



**NOTE:** Please refer to the official and latest product release notes for last-minute updates Technical support may be obtained directly from: Kaltura Support.

#### **Contact Us:**

Please send your documentation-related comments and feedback or report mistakes to the Knowledge Management Feedback group.

We are committed to improving our documentation and your feedback is important to us.

## Audience

This guide is primarily intended for content managers and Kaltura Management Console users and also contains useful information for developers, integrators, and operations and site administrators using the Kaltura platform.

## **Document Conventions**

Kaltura uses the following admonitions:

- Note
- Workflow

1. 2.



NOTE:

È	0_	
	No start	

Workflow: Provides workflow information

Kaltura Management Console (KMC) User Manual

# **Related Documentation**

In addition to this guide, product documentation is available on the Kaltura Knowledge Center.

### CHAPTER 1

# **KMC** Overview

The Kaltura Management Console (KMC) is a media asset management front-end application to the Kaltura Platform. The KMC provides publishers all the tools necessary to manage and publish their media assets, in one intuitive interface.

# What Can I Do with the KMC?

You can:

- Upload content and perform bulk ingestion
- Transcode and manipulate media assets
- Manage metadata profiles and high-precision temporal-metadata
- Design and customize branded media players
- Control and manage end-user entitlements to content in applications such as Kaltura MediaSpace
- Create static and dynamic rule-based playlists
- View analytics and gain insights about how well your content is performing
- Configure live streaming web broadcasts
- Syndicate and distribute content across the web
- Configure ads and leverage ad networks
- Manage access control profiles and limit access to published media
- Manage your Kaltura account settings
- Create Kaltura users, roles and assign permissions and more...

### **Media Management and Workflow**

The KMC provides full media management so that you can organize and track your online video system, functions and rich-media content. The following presents a simple workflow to manage content.

- Uploading and Ingestion upload and ingest video, audio, images and docs, bulk or individual file uploads, via browser, desktop applications, email or mobile.
- Transcoding and Processing convert videos into multiple flavors (optimized output files) and create transcoding profiles to ensure optimal viewing experience on all devices.
- Creating and Customizing Players and Playlists control player size, color, fonts and branding. Add or remove buttons, enable subtitles, sharing, and more. Create manually or dynamically generated playlists.
- Managing Metadata and Categories leverage metadata fields to tag, manage, search and expose content. Populate out-of-the-box fields, or create your own custom metadata schema. Create content packages, including a set of video transcodes, multiple thumbnails in different

sizes, metadata, subtitles, scheduling data, and more.

- Locating Content in the KMC use categories, tags, and any of your custom metadata fields to locate any file, or search caption files for phrases within the video.
- Managing Access Control Profiles control exactly when and where your content is published; decide who can do what within the KMC.
- Configuring KMC Users and Roles use out-of-the-box roles and permissions or create your own custom roles with granular permissions.
- Managing Content Entitlement -control and manage end-user entitlements to content in applications such as Kaltura MediaSpace.
- Managing Categories provide a logical structure for your site and assist with content management.
- Moderation and Editorial Workflows review content to eliminate spam and abusive content in UGC portals. Implement complex editorial workflows for your various team roles.
- Using Subtitles and Captions upload multiple caption files (SRT, XML) and transcripts (TXT), or reference an external link. Viewers can toggle between different language captions.
- Live Streaming schedule and broadcast live events. Includes all the features of on-demand video.
- Content Authoring Tools trim videos, string videos or clips together, add subtitles and cue points.
- Publishing to your Site manage content, create playlists, preview and embed to your sites. Provide the optimal viewing experience across all devices with seamless mobile and tablet support.
- Distribution and Syndication distribute content to your channels on partner sites such as YouTube, Hulu, and DailyMotion, or create video feeds for third-party platforms such as Google, Yahoo! and iTunes.
- Advertising and Ad Networks advertise, integrate with ad networks, and enable payment models.
- Creating and Tracking Analytics get the insight you need on viewer behavior with built-in reports.
- Account Information- modify user information, integration settings and registration information

# Widget and Application Studio

Kaltura's application studio enables you to configure your player instances. The application studio is accessed through the KMC Studio tab.  $\$ 

- Player designs design your player skin select the size, color, fonts, etc.
- Player branding include your logo on the player as a watermark.
- Player functionality and added features decide what buttons to display on the player, create your own custom buttons, and decide what features to enable as part of playback (for example, subtitles, sharing, etc.)
- Player templates select pre-defined player templates, or create your own.

## **Getting Started**

- To login to the KMC
- 1. Go to the Kaltura Management Console (KMC) at: http://www.kaltura.com/index.php/kmc.

**2.** Log-in with the credentials you received in the "Kaltura Registration Confirmation" email. The KMC Dashboard is displayed.

🔅 Kaltura	Dashboard Content Studio Analytics Settings Administration U	pload V
Welcome to the Ka	itura Management Console. You are logged in as a Publisher Administrator user in the Kaltura Writers Team account.	
Upload Content		
	Easily import content already hosted on the web (bulk upload) Upload media files from your computer User Manual Download CSV/XML Samples Tap: Upload, import and create entries from any page with the Upload Menu in the top navigation. Learn More	Top Content Last 30 Days Plays  Plays  00  00  00  00  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
Embed Content on Ye	bur Site	40
0-2	Select a video and embed a player on your site Create and embed a playist (or multiple playists) on your site User Manual	20 - 0 - 9 23/12 8/27/12 10/1/12 10/8/12 10/13/12 10/13/12 10/17/12 10/21/12 View Reports
Customize Features	and Design	Account and Billing
	Customize feature set and design of a pre-defined player or create a new player from customize Players User Manual	Current monthly storage usage so far: 0.00 GB Monthly bandwidth consumption so far: 8.61 GB Contact us to learn more about different packages and added-value services

### CHAPTER 2

# **Uploading and Ingestion**

# What is a Kaltura Entry?

A Kaltura Entry is a logical reference to your media asset. An entry encapsulates all physical media files generated during ingestion (source, "flavors" and thumbnails), standard and custom metadata, captions, scheduling settings, advertising cue points, specific access control settings and all other components relating to the content. An entry is generated immediately, and your source media file starts uploading and transcoding begins. For more information, see the Entries Table.

## **Browser-based Ingestion**

You can upload files from your computer, record a video with your webcam, or import from a selection of online repositories, or submit a bulk upload request via Kaltura formatted CSV/XML all from within the Kaltura Management Console. See The Upload Tab.

# The Kaltura Uploader

You can use the Kaltura Uploader, also known as the Kaltura Contributor Wizard (KCW) to upload any type of rich-media file, from any location (computer, websites, record from webcam).

You can upload content through the:

- Upload Tab
- Dashboard
- Content Tab

# The Upload Tab

The Upload tab presents a list of ingestion options and capabilities to choose from and is used to upload content to Kaltura. The Upload tab opens over any page within the KMC.

You can upload content using the following options:

- Upload Media
- Prepare Entry
- Submit Bulk

Uploading and Ingestion

Administration Upload V
Upload Media
Upload from Desktop
Record from Webcam
Import from Web
Prepare Entry
Video Entry
Audio Entry
Live Stream Entry
Submit Bulk
Select CSV/XML
Download CSV/XML Samples

### **Upload Media**

- Upload from Desktop: Opens a file browser and allows you to select multiple files.
- Record from a Webcam: Allows you to capture video content from a webcam connected to your computer.
- Import from Web: Allows you to search for videos to ingest from video repositories such as Metacafe and others, depending on the feature set enabled in your account.

### **Upload from Desktop**

Use this option to quickly upload files. You can continue working on other tasks while files are uploading, and resume the file upload in case of connection failure.

#### To upload media files from your desktop

- 1. Select the Upload tab.
- 2. Click Upload from Desktop (or click Upload from Desktop in the Dashboard.)
- 3. Select one or more media files. Use the Ctrl key to select multiple files.

Video(\*.flv;\*.asf;\*.qt;\*.mov;\*.mr -

```
Video(*.flv;*.asf;*.qt;*.mov;*.mpg;*.avi;*.wmv;*.mp4;*.3gp;*.f4v;*.m4v;*.mpeg;*.mxf;*.rm;*.rv;*.rmvb;*.ts)
Audio(*.flv;*.asf;*.qt;*.mov;*.mpg;*.avi;*.wmv;*.mp3;*.wav;*.ra;*.rm)
Image(*.jpg;*.jpeg;*.gif;*.png)
```

The Upload Settings window is displayed.

ame	Media Type	File Size	Action
msterdam	Video 🗸	9.67 MB	× Remove

- 4. Select the Transcoding Profile. See Transcoding and Processing.
- 5. Modify the Media Type if needed. The media type is automatically detected from file name extension. The media types allowed are: video, audio or image.
- 6. Click Add Files. (Optional).
- 7. Click Upload.

### **Record from a Webcam**

You can upload media that you record from your webcam via the easy-to-use Kaltura Uploader.

#### To upload media files recorded from a webcam

- 1. Select the Upload tab.
- 2. Click Record from Webcam.
- 3. Select the Transcoding Profile and click Next. See Transcoding and Processing.
- 4. Select a webcam from the dropdown list and click Allow.
- 5. Press Record to record your media file.
- 6. When done, click Next.
- **7.** Enter a Name and all other relevant information for the webcam recording and click Next. The recording is processed and added to the Entries table.

#### **Import from Web**

You can import video, audio and photos from common online media websites and applications. The Metacafe option for importing videos, may address your needs if you are searching for specific content quickly and easily assuming you want to import videos that are hosted in Metacafe. The video's properties (description, running time, brief summary, etc.) can be revealed by mousing over the thumbnail.

	Video	Audio	Photo	
Upload				
Webcam	Search all videos	s on Metacafe		
Metacafe	d katura		Search	,
				2
	C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	101	2	20
				Next

The audio options are Jamendo and CCMixter; the photo options are Flikr and NYPL.

#### To import content from the web

- 1. Select the Upload tab.
- 2. Click Import from Web in the Upload tab.
- 3. Select the Transcoding Profile and click Next. See Transcoding and Processing.
- 4. Click Search to search through videos on Metacafe, or select the Audio or Photo tab and search through your data.
- 5. Select the content to upload and click Next.
- 6. Enter or modify the descriptive information and click Next.

### **Prepare Entry**

You can prepare a video entry without including the media content in advance. Creating a No Media entry may be useful when metadata settings and media perpetrations are managed separately and possibly by different operational teams This scenario is used for media that may be included at a later stage, for example, in a drop folder. See Using a Drop Folder.

The following options are available:

- Prepare Video Entry
- Prepare Audio Entry
- Prepare Live Stream Entry

### **Prepare Video/Audio Entry**

Use this option to prepare metadata and publishing settings for a video/audio entry before its related media files are ready for upload. This option enables a flexible entry preparation workflow and is especially useful when video files are:

- Transcoded by a local transcoder
- Processed while content editorial work is being done in the KMC
- Processed after content editorial work is completed in the KMC



#### Preparing a Draft Entry Workflow:

- 1. Prepare a draft entry in the KMC and fill in its metadata and publishing settings. See Prepare a Metadata-only "Draft" Entry for Future Ingestion of Media Files.
- 2. Add the media source file or the locally generated Transcoding Flavors to the entry. Use the entry's Flavors tab to add files or flavors. See The Flavors Tab.

The ingestion status of an entry that you create with the **Prepare Video/Audio Entry** option automatically is set to No Media. The status remains **No Media** until one or more media files are added to the entry.

An entry that you create with the Prepare Video/Audio Entry option is saved as a Draft entry in the Kaltura system until you add content.

A Draft entry remains available in the **Content** tab Entries table for further editing.

### **Prepare Live Stream Entry**

Use the **Live Stream Entry** option to provision a live stream on the CDN. The live stream should be configured with your encoder IP address.

After the live stream is provisioned, you can set the entry metadata and specific broadcasting settings in the KMC's **Content** tab Entries tab.

For more information see Workflow for Setting up Live Streaming.

# **Creating Draft Entries**

Draft entries are entries created without actual content, and are used as a container for adding content.



Note: You can add or attach content at a later time, by using the BaseEntry->addContent action and use one of the KalturaResource resources. See Kaltura API documentation.

#### **To create a Draft Entry**

- 1. Select the Upload tab.
- 2. Select Video Entry or Audio Entry.
- 3. In the New Entry Window:
  - a. Name (required).
  - b. Description
  - c. Tags
  - d. Categories use the pencil icon to select a category from the existing category list.

letadata			Entry ID:	0_k57bpsk3	
humbnails	Name:	Draft Entry	Endy ID.	0_которако	
	Description:	draft entry for testing docs			
ccess Control				5	
cheduling	Tags:	boys × twins × infants ×		$\otimes$	
				No Media	
lavors					
istribution	Categories: 🖍	Fantasy ×			
aptions			Media not availat	ble.	
aptions			Creator:	ariel.hitron@kaltura.com	
dvertisements			Created on:	07/05/2012	
elated Files	Reference ID:		Landing Page:		
sers			Туре:	Video	
			Moderation:	Auto approved	
			woderation:	Auto approveu	

- 4. If you have Custom Data for entries, you can edit the Custom Data fields for the entry. For multiple schemas, use the drop down Jump To menu to select the schema for the entry. See Managing Schemas for more information.
- 5. Click Save and Close.

The ingestion status for a Draft entry is No Media. The following is an example of a Draft entry in the KMC.

<b>Kaltura</b> Dashboard		Content	Studio	Analytics	Settings	Ac	Iministration U	pload 💙		<a>ariel.hitron@</a>	kaltura.com
Entries Moderation Playlists	Syndi	cation Cat	egories							Upload C	ontrol 🥐
Entries	Sear	rch Entries		Q							🗘 Refresh
Filter by Categories		Thumbnail	ID	Name	Туре	Plays	Created On 🗸	Duration	Status	Actions	
All Categories (No Filter)			0_k57bpsk3	Draft Entry	Ħ	0	07/05/12 13:41	00:00	No Media	Select Action	•
Adventure     Foreign     Drama			0_r82thfpc	The Killer Inside Me Nev	H	0	06/23/12 10:32	02:30	Ready	Select Action	•

### **Key Benefits and Functionality**

You can control the order of ingestion, create a No Media entry with metadata and attach video later. You can prepare a Kaltura media entry and add the relevant media files after uploading content, to enable an efficient and fast paced content ingestion operation. You can create a new media entry in the KMC and set its metadata and publishing information beforehand, or in parallel, to the actual media processing. You can then add the related media files to the existing entry when ready. For more information see Metadata and Related Files.

You can use your own transcoders, and ingest the output flavors to Kaltura. See The Flavors Tab.

Publishers can ingest media assets/files that have already been transcoded locally into multiple flavors and then ingest the files into a Kaltura entry managed from the KMC. This is a Premium option that can be configured by your Account Manager. Ingestion can be done via uploading through the KMC UI,

linking to an existing hosting site, submitting an XML with file links or using the Kaltura API.

### Hosting Videos at your Preferred Location and Linking to Kaltura

This use case is typically combined with transcoding performed on the publisher's side, after which the output files are pushed directly to CDN hosting, or to a local intranet delivery source.

In this case, Kaltura essentially only manages the metadata while media files themselves are delivered directly from the publisher through a CDN to the viewer.

Linking between the files and a Kaltura entry can be done through the KMC, API, or drop folder XML ingestion. See Using a Drop Folder.

## **Replacing Video Assets for a Kaltura Entry**

Publishers can replace media files of an existing media entry when needed.

This feature:

- Is especially useful when media assets need to be re-edited by the publishers following ingestion to Kaltura.
- Enables seamless replacement of media even if media is already published/ syndicated/distributed – media is replaced in all published instances.
- Replaces all multiple-bitrate media assets flavors in one transaction.
- Allows review and approval of new media prior to the actual replacement.
- Is an integral part of the entry life-cycle and content management workflow

For more information see Replacing Media.

## **Uploading and Modifying Related Files**

You can attach files (documents, media) to your entries. Uploaded files will not create new entries but will receive a unique Kaltura Asset ID. Use the **Related Files** tab to upload files associated to entries. Related files are not stored with the entries on the Kaltura platform and are referenced using an Asset ID.

Edit Entry - Dan D	)ennett: Cute, sexy	r, sweet, funny				28
Metadata Thumbnails	You can attach files (do	ocuments, media) to yo	our entries. Uploaded fil	les will not create new entries b	out will receive a unique Kaltur	a ID.
Access Control	File Name	File Type	File Size	Asset ID	Actions	
Scheduling	Dan_DennettCute:	Select Type 🖌	9.28 KB		Edit 👱 Download 🗙 Re	move
Flavors						
Distribution						
Captions						
Advertisements						
Related Files						
Clips						
		Si	ave Save & Close		< Previous Entry Next I	Entry >

#### To upload related files

- 1. Select the Content tab and click on an entry.
- 2. Select the Related Files tab and click Add More Files.
- **3.** Select a file and click Open.
- 4. Select the File Type from the drop down menu. The related file will immediately begin uploading. After the upload is complete, you can edit the file details (title, description), download the file, or remove it.
- 5. Click Save.
- **To edit related files**
- 1. Select the Content tab and click on an entry.
- 2. Select the Related Files tab.
- 3. Select a File and select Edit, Download, or Remove.

# **Bulk Upload and FTP Upload**

You can import multiple files per session via a simple comma separated file (CSV) or an XML file. With these options, you can also ingest files from your own FTP server, or any publicly accessible file's host. Metadata fields can be populated from CSV/XML.

The CSV Bulk Upload file is a simple format. You can use the CSV format for simple content ingestion based on imported source media files and their related metadata. Each entry is added from a single line in the CSV file. Each line includes a path to a media file that will be uploaded and each uploaded media file creates an entry. We recommend a maximum of 500 lines/uploaded media files included within one CSV file.

The XML Bulk Upload file is based on Kaltura's MRSS format schema for content ingestion. The XML format enables bulk ingestion of complex video or audio packages.

Complex packages may include:

- Multiple bit-rate Transcoding Flavors already transcoded by a local transcoder
- Multiple thumbnails
- Related metadata and publishing options

### What is Bulk Upload?

Bulk Upload enables you to ingest multiple entries and files to the Kaltura server in a single action using a single file. The greatest benefit for bulking uploads is:

- Importing multiple files in one action thus automating the ingestion process.
- Ingesting large files which you cannot upload from the desktop via the KMC (larger than 2GB).
- Populating metadata fields with no need to enter them from the KMC.

Bulk upload streamlines publishing, providing the basis for automated bulk ingestion of files and metadata and overcomes browser and client upload limitations allowing for larger file size ingestion.

There are two methods to upload bulk content: the simple method where you use a CSV file (Comma Separated Value) and the advanced method where you use an XML file, which has many extensive bulk upload features. You can customize the structure to the metadata and elements that are part of your account specific workflow. Using the XML file bulk upload is the recommended method due to its structured hierarchy, allowing for nested objects and metadata and is easily extended.

For information on how to download bulk file samples see Downloading Bulk File Samples.

### **Entries XML Bulk Upload**

XML Bulk Upload supports full CRUD (Create, Read, Update, and Delete) operations, allowing for ingestion of entries, updates to existing entries, and deletion of bulk entries using an XML format. XML Bulk Upload is the recommended bulk upload option.

In addition, XML supports a hierarchical structure while CSV does not. You can define a complete content package using the XML Bulk Upload feature that includes the video source file, its metadata, its custom metadata profiles, distribution profiles, set of transcoding flavors (for cases when you are using your own transcoders), thumbnails and other additional relevant data.

The advantages of using XML Bulk Upload are:

- Simplified integration with other systems (for example, migrating media files including their complete metadata from one server to another).
- A streamlined ingestion mechanism, by using XML it is easy to create automated processes to ingest content.
- More comprehensive ingestion models that allow you to manipulate all of the media entry object attributes and their related objects (such as flavors, custom metadata, access control and distribution profiles, etc.).

The full sets of features supported by the XML Bulk Upload are described in the XSD (the XML template).

An example XML file can be found here (or downloaded from the KMC Upload tab).

The bulk upload status is monitored through the bulk upload log under the Uploads control tab, see Tracking Your Uploads. A log file and a copy of the CSV file are made available for troubleshooting or for historical records of uploaded content.

Whether you are a medium sized video publisher or if you're a media giant, you should consider the Bulk Upload option.

### **Submit Bulk Options**

Kaltura provides bulk services and CSV formatted schemas for enabling automatic setup and on-going updates for end-user's details and content entitlement settings. Bulk services can be used to streamline the setup and administration of Kaltura MediaSpace<sup>™</sup> based media portals, and may also be used for convenient submission of bulk operations on the following entities.

There are four types of CSV files available:

- Entries CSV use to upload multiple entries.
- Categories CSV use to create, update or delete a large amount of categories. See Categories CSV for more information.
- End Users CSV use to upload multiple end-user account. See End Users CSV for more information.
- End-User Entitlements CSV use to set, update or delete specific end-user permissions to categories. End-user entitlements can be set to multiple categories through a single CSV file. See End User Entitlements CSV for more information.

Although CSV bulk uploads are less structured and have fewer features than the XML bulk upload, CSV bulk upload is easy to use for simply ingesting video files and their related metadata.

CSV files are easy to edit using Microsoft Excel, Google Docs or similar spread sheet applications.

To specify the fields and their order in the CSV file, the first line in the CSV file should start with an '\*' (asterisk sign) followed by the list of field names, separated by a commas. Lines with'#' (hash sign) will not be processed, as these are essentially comment lines.

Each line after the fields definition line (which starts with an '\*' sign) represents an entry to be ingested and should include the values of every field. Every line is a new entry. All entry fields are processed according to the definition line and according to the order of the fields.

A full list of fields and example CSV file can be downloaded from the KMC Upload tab. See Downloading Bulk File Samples.

#### To submit a CSV or XML file

- **1.** Select the Upload tab.
- 2. Select the type of CSV/XML file from one of the following,



or click Download/Submit CSV/XML in the Dashboard.

3. Click Open.

A message stating that your import request has been submitted is displayed.

#### To track bulk uploads

• See Tracking Your Uploads.

### **Downloading Bulk File Samples**

#### To download a sample bulk file

- **1.** Select the Dashboard tab.
- 2. In the Upload Content section click Submit CSV/XML Samples. or
- 1. Select the Upload tab.
- 2. Click Select CSV/XML Samples.

The samples include specific format descriptions and guidelines.

# Automated Content Ingestion via a Drop Folder

You can add your media and metadata to a drop folder (on-premise or on the Kaltura servers) and the Kaltura system will activate an ingestion workflow tailored to your needs.

You can also upload metadata only and deliver media directly from your CDN, or on-premise storage.

# Using a Drop Folder

The Kaltura Drop Folders are used to automate the ingestion of content into the Kaltura platform. The Drop Folder service constantly watches each drop folder for new content, and activates automatic ingestion of new content to the specific account.

Kaltura offers multiple configuration options for setting each drop folder to a specific workflow. To learn more read about Drop Folders see Kaltura Drop Folder Service for Content Ingestion.

### **Drop Folder Control Panel**

This section applies only after the Kaltura Drop Folder service is set up.

In the KMC Content tab, publisher administrators can use a control panel to monitor and troubleshoot media files in drop folders. Access to the Drop Folders control panel can be granted to specific administrators through the administrator's user role definition.

🗱 Kaltura	Dashboard	Content	Studio	Analytics Se	ttings Adm	nistration Up	load 👻 🤇 🕻 📖
Entries Moderation	Playlists	Syndication Catego	ories			Upload Control	Drop Folders ?
Drop Folders	Search Files		٩				😱 Refresh
Additional Filters		File Name	Drop Folder Name	Created On v	File Size	Status	Error Description
Created between		Logo_Pink (Source).flv	my_folder	07/26/2011 03:40	0.47 MB	Done	
Clear Dates	15	aLime_Source.flv	my_folder	07/26/2011 03:40	0.46 MB	Done	
All Statuses							
Uploading							
Pending Matched							
Not Matched							
<ul> <li>Downloading</li> <li>Done</li> </ul>							
Error							
Delete Failed							
Download Failed							
				1 1-2 of 2		Show	v rows: 50 🔻
				1 1-2 01 2		Snov	v rows: 50 🔻
Drop Folders		Select: Page None			Delete		

The Drop Folders control panel includes the status of each file in the drop folder, and an option to filter the file display for a specific drop folder, status and creation date range.

An additional option to manually delete files from the drop folder can be granted separately only to authorized administrators.

#### **Media Files Table**

The Media Files table in the Drop Folder Control page lists all media files currently available in the account's drop folders. Current details of each file are available within the table. In the filter bar on the left side of the page, you can filter the files by:

- Search criteria
- Drop folder
- File creation date
- Drop folder status

If you need to delete files from the drop folder, click Delete.

#### **Drop Folder Statuses**

- **Uploading** File upload to the drop folder is not complete yet. Upload completion is detected by the drop folder watcher when the file size continues growing during a pre-defined time interval.
- **Pending** File uploading to the drop folder has completed but the file was not yet handled by the drop folder engine.

- **Matched** The file was matched to an existing entry in Kaltura and remains in the drop folder until other files related to the entry's media package also are matched. Note that this status appears only when a drop folder is configured to match media files to an existing entry.
- Not Matched The file was not yet matched to an existing entry in Kaltura and remains in the drop folder until a match occurs. Note that this status appears only when a drop folder is configured to match media files to an existing entry.
- **Done** File ingestion is complete. The file was not yet deleted from the drop folder.
- Error An error occurred while processing a file in the drop folder. When in an error state, an error description is available in the Media Files table.
- **Delete Failed** An error occurred while trying to delete a file from the drop folder.

Commercial users, please contact your account manager to enable this feature in your account.

# The Dashboard Tab

You can upload data, video, audio or photo files through the Dashboard.

#### To upload media files from your desktop

- 1. Click Upload from Desktop in the Dashboard.
- 2. Select the files to upload and click Open.
- 3. Select the Transcoding Profile. See Editing and Creating Transcoding Profiles.
- 4. Select the Media Type and click Upload.

# **Uploading Content Using the Content Tab**

You can upload data through the Content tab. You can add video or audio media to an entry you prepared (when the entry status is No Media, add new transcoding flavors, add metadata, or replace content information. See The Flavors Tab.

# **Tracking Your Uploads**

You can track the upload processing in the Content tab.

### **Your Uploads**

The Your Uploads table lists all the in-progress and pending upload tasks. The list only shows media file uploads from the desktop that you performed during the current KMC session.

For each uploaded file, you can view details such as:

- File name
- File size
- ID of the Kaltura entry that this file is added to

You can use the table to:

• Track the progress of each upload task.

- Reorder upload tasks that are waiting to be processed.
- Retry failed tasks.

Since file uploads are controlled by the KMC web application, closing or refreshing the browser page terminates all upload tasks that currently are in progress.

#### To track the upload progress from your desktop

1. Click the Content tab and select the Entries tab.

The Upload Control feature, located on the upper right of the screen, indicates the number of uploads in progress.

2. Click Upload Control to display the file uploads and to view additional information.

🌼 Kaltura	Dashboard	Content	Studio Analytics	Settings	Administration Up			< Atar Shac	
Entries Mod	leration Playlists Sy	ndication Categorie	s				Upload Control	Drop Folders	?
Your Upl	oads								
	n-progress upload tasks (deskt shing your browser page will ca								
File Name	Uploaded On	Entry ID	File Siz		Status	Progress / Queue Order	Action		
ino namo	opioudou on	chu y io	110 012		, and o	ingroup quote order	10101		-

### **Bulk Upload Log**

The Bulk Upload Log table shows the completed and in-progress bulk upload jobs for your KMC account. You can:

- View information related to each bulk upload job.
- Download original bulk upload files.
- Download a results log file of each bulk upload job.

#### To track the Bulk Upload progress from your desktop

You can display completed and in-progress bulk upload jobs. (optional)

1. Click the Content tab and select the Entries tab.

The Upload Control feature, located on the upper right of the screen, indicates the number of uploads in progress.

- 2. Click Upload Control to display the file uploads and to view additional information.
- 3. Click Switch to Bulk Upload Log, located on the bottom left corner of the screen.

Kaltura		Content Studio	Analytics Settings	Administration	Upload 😕		< Debbi
Entries Mode	eration Playlists Syndicat	ion Categories				Upload Control Dro	p Felders (
Your Uplo	ade						
	-progress upload tasks (desktop uploa ing your browser page will cancel the						
ile Name	Uploaded On	Entry ID	File Size	Status	Progress / Queue Order	Action	



ulk Upload Log										A Refn
s list shows completed and in-progress bulk iditional Filters	upload jobs fo	r this KMC account.	Original File Name	Uploaded	Uploaded On	Number of Items	Status	Notification	Action	
	CSV	Categories	kaltura_betch_upload	c.henfrenk	06/21/12 09:54	7	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	
reated between	CSV	End-Users	katura_bulk_upload_	c.henTrenk	05/21/12 09:54	0	Fatal	Parsing file [BulkUploadUserEngineCsv]	Delete	
rar Dates	C5V	Categories	katura_batch_uploac	c.henfrenk	06/14/12 17:07	15	Finished	Finished successfully	Download Log File	
	CSV	Categories	kabura_batch_upload	c.henfreni	06/14/12 16:57	1	Failed	Failed to create objects	Download Original CSV/XML Select Action	
Vploaded Items	CSV	Categories	kaltura_batch_upload	c.henfreni	06/14/12 16:50	15	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	Ŧ
Entries	CSV	Categories	katura_betch_upload	c.henfrenk	06/14/12 15:54	15	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	Ŧ
Categories End-User Entitlements	CSV	Categories	katura_batch_upload	c.henfrenk	06/10/12 11:40	1	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	+
End-Users	CSV	End-Users	katura_buk_upkad_	c.henfreni	06/05/12 18:07	32	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	*
	CSV	End-Users	katura_buk_upkad_	c.henfreni	06/05/12 18:06	32	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	Ŧ
Voloaded Items	CSV	End-Users	katura_bulk_upload_	chentrent	06/05/12 18:06	32	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	
Finished	CSV	End-Users	katura_bulk_upload_	c.henfrenk	06/05/12 17:43	32	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	Ŧ
Faled	CSV	End-Users	katura_bulk_upload_	c.henfrenk	06/05/12 16:49	32	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	*
All other statuses.	CSV	End-Users	katura_bulk_upload_	c.henfrenk	06/05/12 16:43	22	Finished	Finished successfully	Select Action	*
	CSV	Calegories	myCategoriesBulkUpi	c.henfrenk	06/04/12 17:58	0	Failed	Error. No objects were handled successfully	Select Action	Ŧ
	CSV	Categories	myCategories8u8Upl	c hehfreni	06/04/12 17:55	0	Falled	Error: No objects were handled successfully	Select Action	٠
						1 1-22 of 22			Show rows:	50

You can track the bulk jobs as well as download bulk job related files (original CSV and log files).

#### To download bulk job related files

- 1. Click the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- The Upload Control feature, located on the upper right of the screen, indicates the number of uploads in progress.
- 2. Click Upload Control to display the file uploads and to view additional information.
- 3. Click Switch to Bulk Upload Log, located on the bottom left corner of the screen.
- 4. In the Actions column select Download Log File or Download Original CSV/XML.

#### To revert back to Upload Control

• Click Switch to Your Uploads located on the bottom left corner of the screen.

After the upload process is complete, media is managed through the **Content** tab.

# CHAPTER 3

# **Transcoding and Processing**

When a video is uploaded to the KMC, the video is associated with a conversion profile, also known as a Transcoding Profile. A Transcoding Profile may be comprised of a single flavor or multiple flavors. For each upload session, you should select the Transcoding Profile. You can also set a default Transcoding Profile.

A transcode is made from taking an encoded piece of video and converting it into one or more newly compressed streams that can then be played in a player on a computer or mobile device depending on the settings and methods used. The main purpose of the reconversion is to create a match for the required target platforms and distribution methods,

Kaltura flavors represent the required renditions of the source file with distinct codecs, frame sizes and bitrates. You can select to generate or add multiple flavors to an entry, including flavors geared towards displaying media on mobile devices (low bandwidth, small screens, and/or HTML5 supporting devices). An asset is a single output file with its specific file type, video/audio codecs, bit-rate, GOP size, that may be used for playback, download or editing.

The Kaltura platform supports ingestion of all forms of rich media (including video, images, audio, PDF, an others), and allows you to define different transcoding profiles, depending on your publishing needs.

Additional transcoding flavors can easily be added for publishing across different devices, network bandwidths and screen sizes. Kaltura's transcoding decision layer engine supports more than 60 video and image formats as well as 140 video and audio codecs.

When you upload content you determine what type of flavors you want to associate with your output.

There are three transcoding profiles that are automatically created for new accounts:

- **Default** the flavors included in the default transcoding profile of the account. These flavors appear in the main Transcoding Settings page.
- **Source Only** uploads the source file, but does not transcode it; the source is the original file uploaded as is. Other flavors will not be created.
- All Flavors transcodes uploaded files into all of the flavors defined in the main Transcoding Settings page. See Transcoding Settings Page.

### **Converting Videos into Multiple Flavors (Optimized Output Files)**

Kaltura's player provides optimal playback by using adaptive bitrate technology that automatically selects the most appropriate flavor asset for playback, based on the viewer's specific connection and other parameters.

Getting content onto the platform is the first step and transcoding processing is part of the upload session. For a quick and simple upload, use the default flavors that are provided and that can be enabled/disabled from the transcoding profile you want to use.

#### To display the default flavors for transcoding your content

• Select the Settings tab and then select Transcoding Settings.

The Default Transcoding Flavors window is displayed which contains the flavor selection of the Default Transcoding profile.

Far	ult Tree	scoding Flavors						
		-	using adaptive bitrate technology and automatic	ally selecting the most appropriate	file for playback	based on the viewer's	specific connection and	l other parameters.
h vio	deo or audi	o file uploaded to the system	m will be transcoded to the default flavors select	cted below.				
	ID	Conversion Flavor	Description		Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions
/	0	Source	Maintains the original format and settings of th	ne file - duplicate of the source file			0	[auto] × [auto]
	1	HD	High Definition		flv	vp6	4192	[auto] × 1080
/	2	High - Large	High web quality, large frame		flv	vp6	2628	[auto] x 720
	3	Standard - Large	Standard web quality, large frame		flv	vp6	1446	[auto] x 720
•	4	Standard - Small	Standard web quality, small frame		flv	vp6	846	[auto] x 352
	5	Basic - Small	Basic web quality, small frame. To be used for	or low resource environments.	flv	vp6	496	[auto] x 352
	6	HQ MP4 for Export	MP4 format, to be used for download or synd	lication	mp4	h264	2628	[auto] x 720
	7	Editable	Good web quality, to be used for editable con	itent	flv	vp6	764	[auto] x 480
	301951	Mobile (H264) - Basic	iPhone,android		mp4	h264b	464	480 x [auto]
	301961	Mobile (H264) - Standard	Mobile (H264) - Standard		mp4	h264b	864	480 x [auto]
	301971	iPad	iPad		mp4	h264m	1628	1024 x [auto]
	301991	Mobile (3GP)	Nokia/Blackberry		3gp	mpeg4	864	480 x [auto]

### **Editing and Creating Transcoding Profiles**

#### To edit a Transcoding Profile

- Select the Settings tab and then select Transcoding Settings. The Default Transcoding Flavors window is displayed showing the flavors you selected for the Default Transcoding profile.
- 2. On the lower left corner, click Switch to Advanced Mode.

1000		nscoding Flavors			1000		
			using adaptive bitrate technology and automatically selecting the most appropriate n will be transcoded to the default flavors selected below.	the for playbac	ck based on the viewers	specific connection and	other parameters.
	ID	Conversion Flavor	Description	Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions
•	0	Source	Maintains the original format and settings of the file - duplicate of the source file			0	[auto] × [auto]
	3	но	High Definition	tiv:	vp6	4192	[auto] × 1080
	2	High - Large	High web quality, large frame	flv .	vp6	2628	[auto] × 720
•	з	Standard - Large	Standard web quality, large frame	τiv	vp6	1446	[auto] x 720
•	4	Standard - Small	Standard web quality, small frame	The .	vp6	846	[auto] x 352
-	5	Basic - Small	Basic web quality, small frame. To be used for low resource environments.	flv:	vp6	496	[auto] x 352
	6	HQ MP4 for Export	MP4 format, to be used for download or syndication	mp-4	h264	2628	[auto] × 720
1	7	Editable	Good web quality, to be used for editable content	tiv	Vp6	764	[auto] x 480
	301951	Mobile (H264) - Basic	iPhone, and rold	mp4	h264b	464	480 × [auto]
3	301961	Mobile (H264) - Standard	Mobile (H264) - Standard	mp-4	h264b	864	480 x [auto]
	301971	iPad	iPad	mp4	h264m	1628	1024 x (auto)
1	301991	Mobile (3GP)	Nokia/Blackberry	Здр	mpeg4	864	480 x [auto]

#### The Transcoding Profiles window is displayed.

ID	Name	Description	Flavors Included	Actions
4721	Default	The default set of flavors. If r	x Source ,Basic - Small ,Editable ,Standard - Small (H264) ,Standard - Large (H264) ,High - Large (H264) ,HD (H2	2 Add N
				Addim

3. Click a Transcoding Profile (Name) to edit or click Delete to remove a transcoding profile.

	what happen	10 WINED C	product - Home	u outio	JOK WE	т мрр 🔽 сусра	ie oocs in prog	MMC >	oasedoard 🔛 (321 i	nread) - 0600(	racebook	Kartu	ra - Test Me Co 🔣	
Kaltura	Dat	shboard	Content	Studi	ю	Analytics	Settings	Ad	ministration	Upload Y				< Debble 2
count Settings	Integration S	ettings A	Iccess Control	anscodi	ing Set	Custom	Data My User	Settings	Account Upgrade					
	ling Prot													
ranced mode, you	i cat define addito	nal transcoding	Edit Transcor	ding P	rofile	0					•	90		
	ID .	Name	*Name:	Detaut	1								kons 🐨	
	2149071	Detaut	Description: Nam	Description: Name is required set of flavors. If not specified otherwise all media uploaded will be converted based on the definition in this profile								-		Add New Profiles
	2655331		and the second										Set as Default	
			"Flavors:		10	Conversion Flav	Description	Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions			
	2149081	Source of		4	0	Source	Maintains the origin			0	[auto] × [auto]	î.	Set an Default	
	2149081	Al Devois		4	5	HD	High Definition	9v	vp6	4192	[euto] x 1080		Net as Default	
				~	2	High - Large	High web quality, k	flv	vp6	2628	[auto] × 720			
				*	3	Standard - Large	Standard web qua	flv	vp6	1446	[auto] x 720		_	
				4	4	Standard - Small	Standard web qua	flv	vp6	B46	[auto] × 352			
				×	5	Basic - Snat	Basic web quality,	Ðv.	vp6	496	[auto] x 352			
			Default Metadata	Entry D				_	Ingest from	N/A.				
			Settings:	Cutye	_				Remote Storage:	1974		-		
							Save	Changes	Ŭ.					
				_				_						

- **4.** Use the checkbox to select flavors to add or remove.
- 5. Enter the Default Metadata Settings Entry ID (Optional). This feature is useful if you want to set default metadata settings such as tags/categories to files you ingest. See Upload a Media File and Set Its Metadata. If your account is used and configured to ingest content from Remote Storage- select the remote storage name from the menu (Optional).
- 6. Click Save Changes.

# Adding a Transcoding Profile

- To create a Transcoding Profile
- 1. Select the Settings tab and then select Transcoding Settings.
- **2.** On the lower left corner, click Switch to Advanced Mode.
- 3. Click Add Profile.

Name:	New Transcoding profile													
Description:	Profile Contains All Flavors													
Flavors:	ID		Conversion Flav	Description	Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions						
		0	Source	Maintains the origin			0	[auto] × [auto]						
		1	HD	High Definition	flv	vp6	4192	[auto] x 1080						
	◄	2	High - Large	High web quality, la	flv	vp6	2628	[auto] x 720						
	◄	3	Standard - Large	Standard web qua	flv	vp6	1446	[auto] x 720						
	◄	4	Standard - Small	Standard web qua	flv	vp6	846	[auto] x 352						
	◄	5	Basic - Small	Basic web quality,	flv	vp6	496	[auto] x 352						
)efault Metadata Settings:	ta Entry ID Ingest from Remote Storage: N/A													

The Add New Transcoding Profile window is displayed. You can view the available transcoding flavors, or add new Transcoding Profiles and create profiles for different use cases.

- 4. Enter a Name and Description for the Transcoding Profile.
- 5. Select the flavors out of the available flavors on your account, to apply to the source video you upload.

The flavors you select become active.

- **6.** Edit the flavor's options. (Optional). Click an active flavor name to open the flavor settings in this Transcoding Profile.
- **7.** For extra fast publishing, set the Impact On Entry Readiness field to Required, for the minimum set of flavors and the rest of the flavors to Optional.(optional)

Use this option to publish your content even faster. See Quick Publishing .

8. Enter the Entry ID for the Default Metadata Settings. (optional) See Uploading Content and Setting Metadata.

The entry's metadata fields are added to the transcoding profile. Each new entry that is transcoded using the profile will include those metadata fields. (You can create a "Metadata template".) You can use The Metadata entries as "metadata templates" for adding metadata to multiple files. See Useful Tips for Working with Transcoding Profiles.

- Select the Remote storage name, for linking new entries to media assets located on your CDN or remote storage, if applicable, to your workflow. Otherwise this feature is disabled with a N/A indication. See Link to Remote Storage.
- **10.** Click Create New to create the profile or Save changes if you are editing the profile.

### **Quick Publishing**

A popular requirement for news websites and video publishers is to publish videos as quickly as possible. Kaltura allows you to control video asset readiness speed by allowing you to configure the ingestion process to your needs.

By default, a video entry is not at the 'Ready' status (for publishing) until all of the required flavors (by default the required set of flavors is the minimal set of flavors required for web playback) are created. If

many flavors are included in the transcoding profile, the conversion process may take many minutes, which is often not fast enough for breaking news videos.

You can configure whether a certain flavor's readiness is required or not, so that you can publish your content quickly.

For example, assuming the source flavor is a web-playable entry created using h264 for web and mobile. You can configure h264 as the required flavor, while all other flavors are optional. The entry will receive the "Ready" state for publishing immediately after the upload is complete. The other flavors will then be processed and added to the entry in the background subsequently, after a short processing period. Failure of a required flavor causes failure for the entire entry.

See http://blog.kaltura.org/extra-fast-publishing for more information.



**NOTE:** The same flavor may have different settings in a different transcoding profile, which allows for greater publishing flexibility).

# **Editing Options for Flavors in a Transcoding Profile**

The following options may be edited for each transcoding flavor selected in a Transcoding Profile:

- Impact on Entry Readiness –Determines the impact of each specific transcoding flavor on entry readiness for publishing. See Quick Publishing. The options are:
  - Required The entry will not be set to a Ready state until the processing of the specific transcoding flavor is complete. To expedite video readiness we recommend applying the 'Required' setting to a single flavor that is required for playback on each required environment. For example, if the source file is an MOV that cannot be played on the web, flagging only one lowest quality FLV or MP4 flavor as 'Required' will ensure the video will be published as quickly as possible while the other flavors are being prepared.
  - Optional The entry may be set to a Ready state before the processing of the specific transcoding flavor is complete. When no other Transcoding Flavor within the Transcoding Profile is set as required, completion of the processing of any Optional flavor sets the entry to the Ready state. We recommend using this option for most flavors to increase speed of readiness.
  - **No Impact** Determining entry readiness is not affected by the presence of this transcoding flavor. This is usually the default setting for the "Source" transcoding flavor.
- Use Kaltura Transcoding Determines whether to use the Kaltura transcoding engine for generating each specific transcoding flavor. This option is enabled only when your account is set to support the ingestion of multiple bit-rate transcoding flavors generated by your local transcoder. If Kaltura performs transcoding of all flavors except the 'source' file, this option should be set to Always. The options are:
  - **Always** Kaltura's transcoding engine always is used for generating the specific Transcoding Flavor.
  - Never The Kaltura transcoding engine will not generate the specific transcoding flavor. This
    is a fixed setting for the "Source Flavor" which always is added to the entry with no additional
    processing. This option should also be used when your account's content ingestion workflow
    relies on a local transcoding engine and when the ingestion of the previously transcoded
    Flavor to Kaltura should always take place, bypassing Kaltura's conversion processing.
  - As a Fall-back The system expects to add this transcoding flavor from a local transcoding engine, but will use Kaltura's transcoding engine as a fall-back to convert to this flavor when the flavor is not received as part of the ingestion request. This option adds flexibility when you
want to use your local transcoding engine while utilizing Kaltura's transcoding engine as a fall-back option.

- System Name (Optional) The system name is used to identify the flavor in client-side • applications. For example, to mark a specific flavor as suitable for playback on iPad devices, the system name was set to iPad.
- **Flavor Generation Policy** You can bypass Kaltura's transcoding optimization, and force specific flavors to be generated even when they are detected as redundant by the Kaltura transcoding optimization module. The options are:
  - o Use Kaltura's Optimization Kaltura's optimization routine decides whether it is worth-while to create a flavor (For example if the source video is of lesser quality than the flavor, the optimization routine will not create the flavor).
  - Force Flavor generation –Select this option to override the Kaltura optimization routine and create a flavor regardless of whether or not it is redundant guality wise (For example, when a publisher has to distribute the video through a broadcast channel that requires specific flavor specifications, the flavor must be created.)

## Assigning a Transcoding Profile to a Bulk Upload

A default Transcoding profile is included with the KMC. After you create a Transcoding Profile, an ID is created and listed in the Transcoding Profiles page.



#### To assign a transcoding profile other than the default profile, to a bulk upload

- Set the ID from the Transcoding Profiles to the conversionProfileId in your CSV. •
- Set the ID from the Transcoding Profiles List to the conversionProfileId in your XML file.

## **Useful Tips for Working with Transcoding Profiles**

If you want to configure your KMC account to support automated content ingestion workflows, you can optionally add default metadata settings from an existing entry. The default entry metadata setting automatically will populate the new content when using each specific transcoding profile.

For example, you want to target two distinct audiences with your videos, the first is public facing videos and the second is internal company videos.

You can create two transcoding profiles, one for each of your target audiences, even though you might convert them to the same flavors you can use different "default metadata settings" so your public facing videos will have their specific metadata values, while the internal company videos can have different fields or data. All this is done automatically after you prepare one template entry for the process.

#### To use metadata settings with transcoding profiles

1. Create the template entry you want to use:

Create a "Draft" entry, using the Upload tab. See Creating Draft Entries.

2. Prepare the metadata. See Prepare a Metadata-only "Draft" Entry for Future Ingestion of Media Files.

For example: Template Entry for Transcoding Profile X".

Manage Moderate Playlis	Edit Entry - Metao	lata Template fo	r Public Content	0 8	pload Control Drop Folders 🥑
Filters	Metadata				🛱 Refresh
Search Entries	Metadata	Name:	Metadata Template for Public Content		Publish
Additional Filters	Thumbnails	Description:			-
User Manual Demo	Access Control				Preview & Embed
Movies	Scheduling	Tags:	public		E E
Test my girls	scheduling	Categories:		$\sim$	Preview & Embed
My boys	Flavors	Reference ID:			Preview & Embed
Distribution	Custom Data	Entry Id:	1_rgh9o5tq	No Media	Preview & Embed
	Distribution	Landing Page:			
Categories	Distribution	Туре:	Video		Preview & Embed
All (52)	Captions	Moderate:	Auto approved	No flavor assets in the system for this entry.	Preview & Embed
Aquarium (1)	Advertisements	Flags:			Preview & Embed
Boxee (11)	Related Files	Duration:	00:00		
Movies (11)	Related Tiles	Created:	Thu Dec 15 2011 03:53 PM		Preview & Embed
Open Source Movies (1)		Creator:	Debbie.Zioni@kaltura.com		Preview & Embed
children kids (2)					
examples (10)					Preview & Embed
example1 (9)					Preview & Embed
example2 (9)			Save Save & Close	< Previous Entry Next Entry >	

**3.** If you use custom metadata, edit the entry metadata fields. For example you can enter data that reflects the template data for your company, such as your "company name" field since your company name is unlikely to change.

If you do not use custom metadata, click here to learn more about it. You next have to set the template entry on the transcoding profile.

- 4. Go to the Settings tab and select the Transcoding Profiles tab.
- 5. Select the flavors of your default transcoding profile.
- 6. Click Switch to Advanced Mode link at the bottom of the page.
- 7. Edit the transcoding profile you wish to create a template entry for, by clicking on it.
- 8. In the Edit Transcoding Profile window, enter the Entry ID you want to set as the template entry in the Default Metadata Settings field.

## **The Flavors Tab**

The Flavors tab in the Edit Entry window allows you to manage the *flavors* that are available as well as replace media files and their transcoding flavors.

#### Transcoding and Processing

Metadata	Current state	e: No Transcoding Flavo	ors available	e for this er	itry. Entry is not rea	ady for publishing.				
Thumbnails	Add Video:	Upload File/s	port File/s	s Lin	k to Remote Stor	age Match	from Drop F	older		
Access Control	Click the Action	n dropdown menu below t	o manage t	he Transco	ding Flavors for thi	s entry.			😱 Refr	es
Scheduling	Asset ID	Transcoding Flavor	Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions	Size(KB)	Status	Action	
lavors		Source				null x null			Select Action 🖌	
Custom Data		HD				null x 1080			Select Action	
		High - Large				null x 720			Select Action	
Distribution		Standard - Large				null x 720			Select Action 🖌	
Captions		Standard - Small				null x 352			Select Action	
Advertisements		Basic - Small				null x 352			Select Action	
Related Files		HQ MP4 for Export				null x 720			Select Action 🖌	
		Editable				null x 480			Select Action	
		Mobile (H264) - Basic				480 x null			Select Action	
		Mobile (H264) - Standa				480 x null			Select Action	
		iPad				1024 x null			Select Action	

Save Save & Close

< Previous Entry Next Entry >

Use the Flavors tab to:

- Add video or audio media to a new entry you created (when the entry status is No Media).
- Replace the media of an existing entry (when the entry status is Ready or Error).
- View the list of flavors that the system created for an entry and apply the following actions:
  - Preview or delete a flavor.
  - o Download the transcoded file to your desktop.
  - Upload a file from your desktop you that transcoded on your own, to serve as a flavor for an entry.
  - o Upload a file from a drop folder to set as the transcoding flavor
  - o Import the flavor from a URL.
  - o Convert or reconvert to transcode an entry to additional flavors.

After the transcoding process is complete, the new file replaces the old file and the original file is deleted.

When your KMC account supports direct ingestion of multiple bit-rate Transcoding Flavors, you can use the Action menu to add or replace a single Transcoding Flavor in an entry.

## Add Video/Audio

The Flavors tab displays several Add Video/Audio options when an entry is not yet associated with any media that is, the entry status is No Media. See Prepare Entry. For more information see Replacing Media.

## **Upload Files**

Use this option to add media to an existing entry by uploading one or more files from your desktop.

#### To upload content and flavors to a Draft entry

- 1. Click on the Draft Entry and then select the Flavors tab.
- 2. Click Upload File/s to open a standard desktop file selection window. The uploaded file is treated as the source for generating the required Transcoding Flavors in Kaltura. When your KMC account supports direct ingestion of multiple bit-rate Transcoding Flavors, you can select multiple flavor files for the Transcoding Profile.
- Select the files from your desktop, confirm your selection, and set the relevant Transcoding Flavor that the uploaded file will be transcoding by.
   The Transcoding Flavor options in the menu are set from the selected Transcoding Profile and its flavor settings.
- **4.** Click Upload to confirm your upload request.

The KMC immediately starts processing the file uploads. The uploaded file is added to the entry and flavor conversion processing starts.

## **Import Files**

Use this option to add media to an existing entry by importing a media file from your existing web host or FTP server. The option is displayed when the entry status is No Media.

#### To import content and flavors to a Draft entry

- 1. Click on the Draft Entry and then select the Flavors tab.
- 2. Click Import Files to set your media file URL.

The imported media file is treated as the source for generating the required Transcoding Flavors in Kaltura. When your KMC account supports direct ingestion of multiple bit-rate Transcoding Flavors, you can set multiple URLs.

- **3.** Set the relevant Transcoding Flavor that the imported file will be transcoded by. The Transcoding Flavor options in the menu are set from the selected Transcoding Profile and its flavor settings.
- 4. Click Import to confirm your import request.

Update Video	9 8
Transcoding Profile: Default 🗸	
File URL	
	Import

An import request is submitted to the Kaltura server. The imported file will be added to the entry and flavor conversion processing starts.

## Link to Remote Storage

Kaltura's Remote Storage and Delivery solution enables publishers to manage their video assets and account settings on Kaltura's hosted video platform while actually storing the content on their own remote network storage location, and delivering the content from the same remote location. Kaltura's remote storage and delivery capabilities are fully integrated with the platform's ingestion, transcoding and publishing workflows, and provide system flexibility for addressing publishers' specific storage and delivery needs.

You can link content to remote storage from the KMC User Interface. The Link to Remote Storage option is useful for partners that use their own transcoder and also host and deliver content on/from a remote storage (e.g. CDN storage, internal organization storage). The partner's transcoder generates the flavors. After the files are uploaded directly to the remote storage it is only necessary to indicate which flavors to link to an entry in Kaltura. The connection of the remote storage profile to the transcoding profile is used for this purpose.

Update Video 2	8
Transcoding Profile: Default 🗸	
Remote Storage Name:     ID:       Storage URL:     Storage Base Directory:	
File Pathname	
Note: When conversion by Kaltura is required, the file defined as Source will be imported to Kaltura.	

Link	
L .	-
Contact your Kaltura account manager to learn more about how this feature can simplify you	ur workflow,
and to activate and configure remote storage on your account.	

## Match Files from Drop Folder

Use this option to match media to an existing entry from your account's drop folder. This option is displayed when your account is set with a drop folder configuration. For more information see Kaltura Drop Folder Service for content Ingestion.

## **Replacing Media**

You can replace media content when an entry is ready for publishing or when a media processing error occurred. The entry itself, with its current metadata, entry ID, and analytics information, remains unchanged.

All Transcoding Flavors are replaced as one unit to ensure that inconsistency errors do not occur between old and new Transcoding Flavors at any given time.

You can review the Transcoding Flavors of the new media file in a temporary entry that is available for this purpose only. After you approve media replacement, all of the entry's existing Transcoding Flavors are deleted and are replaced by the new ones.

#### To replace media

1. Select the **Content** tab and click on an entry.

- 2. Select the Flavors tab and click on an entry.
- **3.** Select the replacement method.

Metadata	Current state	: All required Transco	ding Flavors	are availab	le. Entry is ready fo	r publishing.			
Thumbnails	Replace Video	D: Upload File	Import Fil	e					
Access Control	Click the Action	dropdown menu below f	to manage t	he Transcoo	ding Flavors for this	entry.			📭 Refresh
Scheduling	Asset ID	Transcoding Flavor	Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions	Size(KB)	Status	Action
Flavors	0_0jq91m85	Source	flv			640 x 480	4710	ок	Select Action
Distribution		HD				null x 1080			Select Action
Jiot i bullon		High - Large				null x 720			Select Action
Captions		Standard - Large				null x 720			Select Action
Advertisements		Standard - Small				null x 352			Select Action
Related Files		Basic - Small				null x 352			Select Action
Users		HQ MP4 for Export				null x 720			Select Action
00010		Editable				null x 480			Select Action
		Basic - Small (H264)				null x 352			Select Action
		Standard - Small (H26				null x 352			Select Action
		Standard - Large (H2				null x 720			Select Action

See Upload Files, Import Files, Link to Remote Storage or Match Files from Drop Folder. After you trigger the action, a link to review the new Transcoding Flavors generated for the new media becomes available on the Flavors tab.

Edit Entry - kisses	s_NEW	<b>?</b> 8
Metadata		
Thumbnails	Current state: All required Transcoding Flavors are available. Entry is ready for publishing. Video replacement is in process Video Replacement Details: All current flavors will be replaced upon replacement approval. Any time based metadata may be effected as w	
Access Control	Temp Entry ID: 1_cbeasng3   Status: Processing - Click here to review   × Cancel Replacement / ✓ Approve Replacement	<b>c</b>
Scheduling	Click the Action dropdown menu below to manage the Transcoding Flavors for this entry.	efresh

4. Click on Processing - Click here to review to see the transcoding process.

lavors	Current state:	Transcoding Flavors	are current	ly being pro	cessed. Entry will I	be ready in a few i	minutes.		
	Click the Action of	dropdown menu below t	o manage ti	he Transcoo	ding Flavors for this	s entry.			📭 Refresh
	Asset ID	Transcoding Flavor	Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions	Size(KB)	Status	Action
	0_1 fiqijie	Source	avi	mp42	1329	720 x 1280	17612	ок	Select Action
	0_9glm1gm8	Basic - Small	flv	h.263	510	192 x 352	6748	ок	Select Action
	0_ycw0dg2u	Editable	flv	h.263	788	256 x 480	10444	ок	Select Action
	0_18vguxu2	Standard - Small (H26-	mp4			null x null	0	Convertir	*
	0_c86cg78u	HD (H264)	mp4			null x null	0	N/A	Select Action
	0_npjo1hl0	High - Large (H264)	mp4			null x null	0	N/A	Select Action
	0_6lr8o9xr	Standard - Large (H26	mp4			null x null	0	N/A	Select Action
		HD				null x 1080			Select Action
		High - Large				null x 720			Select Action
		Standard - Large				null x 720			Select Action
		Standard - Small				null x 352			Select Action
		HQ MP4 for Export				null x 720			Select Action

5. Click Approve Replacement. All current flavors are replaced when you approve the replacement or click Cancel Replacement to cancel your actions.

When you trim an entry, you trigger a similar process that replaces existing flavors with the trimmed version.

## **Supported Source Formats**

The following source formats are supported and may be ingested by the Kaltura platform:

FLV/F4V, MOV/MP4/QT/M4V, AVI, 3GP, ASF/WMV, MPG/M1V/M2V/MPEG-TS, MKV, Ogg, RM, WEBM

Additional formats may be supported as well but have not been verified.

## **Supported Source Codecs**

The following codecs are supported (Additional codecs may be supported as well but have not been verified):

#### Input Video Codecs

Dvix (Div3/4/5)/DX50, DV, H263, H264/AVC, MPEG-4 Visual, MPEG-1/2, MJPG, MP42/3, IV40/50 (Indeo codecs), RV30/40, RMVB, FLV1/4, VP3/5/6/7/8, SVQ1/3 (Sorenson), XVid, Theora, WMV1/2/3, VC1, VP8, ProRes 422, ICOD, DVCPRO. PXLT

#### **Input Audio Codecs**

MP3, MP1/2, AC3, AAC, Vorbis, AMR, PCM, WMA7/8/9, WMSpeech, FLAC, QDM2, RA, Nellymoser,

Cook, GSM, SPEEX.

## **Target Formats/Codecs**

The following target formats and codecs are supported— i.e. formats and codecs that can be managed and/or displayed using the Kaltura platform:

#### **Target Formats**

FLV, MP4, AVI, 3GP, OGG, MKV, WMV, Silverlight Smooth Streaming. WEBM, MPEG, MPEG TS

#### **Target Video Codecs**

H264, H263/FLV1, Theora, MPEG-4 Visual, WMV1/2, VC1, VP6, VP8, MPEG-2

#### **Target Audio Codecs**

MP3, AAC, Vorbis, WMA/Pro, AMR NB, AC3

#### **Delivery-specific Formats**

In addition to Progressive Download and RTMP delivery methods, Kaltura supports RTSP streaming (for Blackberry devices), Akamai HD Network and Apple HTTP Live Streaming as well. Akamai HD Network and Apple HTTP Live Streaming require specially adapted target formats, which Kaltura supports as well.

## CHAPTER 4

# **Creating and Customizing Playlists and Players**

This chapter describes how to create and cutomize playlist and players.

## What is a Playlist?

A playlist is a list of media items (videos, audios, images) that can be embedded with a player in your website. Playlists can serve as the basis for RSS feeds, content feeds to over the top devices or integrations such as Roku, Boxee. See Content Syndication.

## **Playlists Tab**

There are two types of playlists available in the KMC:

- Manual
- Rule Based

Manual playlists allow you to select a static list of items, while Rule based playlists are dynamic, and automatically update based on what's currently available in your media library and what rules define the playlist. After you've created your playlist, you can assign a playlist to a player. See Designing and Configuring a Player.

A manual playlist can have a maximum of 150 entries. A rule based playlist may have a maximum of 50 entries, however, when the playlist is used in a syndication feed the limitation is 10,000 entries.

## **Creating a Manual Playlist**

To create a manual playlist, you manually select a group of videos to be played in the desired order. The order in which videos are played can be changed in manual playlists at any time, by using the up down arrows to set the video to the desired location within the playlist.

#### To create/add a manual playlist

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Playlists tab.
- 2. Select Add Manual Playlist.

laylists	Search	Playlists	٩				CD Ref		
reated between		1D	Name	Playlist Type	Created On	Actions			
COD - COD Class Conse		0_kjkiz3n7	my new PL with predeficed i	Manual	05/07/12 11:03	Select Action	Add Manual Playlist Add Rule Based Playlist		
		0_pcbljitjh	tana	Manual	04/02/12 17:16	Select Action			
	0_7w84av86	new rulebased of	Rule Based	04/02/12 12:23	Select Action				
		0_bően9zek	neter.manual.B	Manual	04/02/12 12:17	04/02/12 12:17 Select Action V			
		0_86x05687	new PL with no crep filters	Rule Based	03/28/12 16:53	Select Action 👻			
		0_hq7oswtc	free text of	Rule Based	02/13/12 15:22	Select Action			
		0_gv7papib	tototo	Manual	01/29/12 18:07	Select Action			

- 3. Enter an informative Name for your playlist.
- **4.** Use the Filters to search for entries you want to include. See Locating Files Content Search. The results are displayed in the Entries Table.

New Manu	ıal Playlist						?
Name:	DZ_new_manual_playlist						
Description:							
Tags:							
ilters		Filter Preferences	es				
Search Entrie	s O			Name	Туре	Plays	Duratio
Categories		Display Entries associated with the selected category ONLY					
Additional Fil	ite re	Display Entries associated with the selected category AND its sub-categories					
test-for docs							
	5						
For Filter							
test							
text select lis	st						
aviya aviya							
eeee		Save					
related video	os list						
kms4							
test test			Ent	ries: 0 Du	uration: 00:0	0	
TestTest							

- **5.** Add entries to your playlist by moving the desired entries from the Entries Table to the Playlist Entries. Use the horizontal arrows.
- 6. Set the order of the entries using the vertical arrows.

Highlight the entry and then use the up down arrows to place the entries in their appropriate order. Clicking on the entry will open it for editing.

7. Click **Save** to complete the process.



## **Creating a Rule Based Playlist**

A rule based playlist is a dynamic playlist that is automatically updated when content is uploaded or edited. To create a rule based playlist, you create a rule that selects the videos to include in the playlist. The rules may be based on the tags assigned to the videos, or you can create rules for ordering the videos and for the maximum number of videos to include. For example, you can create a "Most Viewed" playlist, a "Most Recent" playlist, as well as a playlist based on single or multiple filters, such as "videos tagged with "dogs" and created during January 2010".

As you upload videos that match the rule, they are automatically added to the playlist.

## **Defining a Rule**

You can define a rule that will result in your playlist content. You can use any number of filters: you can define a list of clips that all have the same tag (for example, if you enter the term "dog" into the search box and click search, a new rule-based playlist is created for all the clips that have the "dog" tag). This list will dynamically change each time a clip is added or deleted to/from your account.

For example, you can define a rule-based playlist that consists of all the 0-4 minute video clips that were created in the past week. In addition to filtering, at the bottom of the window, you can define a preferred order for your playlist. You can order it by Most Viewed (overall, last week or last 24 hours) or Most Recent (for example, most recently added to the KMC).

If, for example, you would like to create a dynamic playlist that at any given moment consists of the most viewed clips in the last week, all you need to do is create a new filter and select the "Most Viewed 7 Days" option from the "Order by" drop-down menu.

On the bottom of the playlist you can see the number of entries in the playlist and their total length. You can automatically limit the number of entries that are included in the playlist by adjusting the counter positioned to the right of the "Order by" drop-down menu.

Your playlist can be based on a single rule or multiple rules. If you want to apply more than one rule to

your playlist, click the "Switch to Advanced Mode" link at the bottom of the window. Note that this will clear all previous information that you have saved in your playlist.

#### To create/add a single rule playlist

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Playlists tab.
- 2. Select Add Rules Based Playlist.
- 3. Enter an informative Name for your playlist (required).
- **4.** Using the Filters, search for the entries you would like to include.

The results are displayed in the Entries Table. You can choose more than one type of filter (for instance, text search + date + media type), the logical relationship between fields will be an "AND" relationship.

- 5. Select your preferred video order from the Order By drop-down menu.
- 6. Select the total number of entries you would like to include in the playlist via the Limit Playlist result box.
- 7. Click Save Changes to complete the process.

My new playlist 2						98
*Name:		My new play	list 2			
Description:						
Filters		Playlist Entries				
Animals	<b>Q</b>	Name	Туре	Plays	Duration	
Additional Filters		Big Buck Bunny		0	09:56	-
Created between:	-	Car racing 3 (H2	×	1	03:49	≣
02/01/2010		Trailer 3 (H264)		0	02:21	_
<u>Clear Dates</u>		dartmoor		0	02:13	
All Media Types		Elephants Drean	×	0	10:58	
✓ Video Image		Big Buck Bunny		0	00:33	
Audio		Companies to w	×	0	02:30	
Video Mix	•		Ent	tries: 20 Duration	: 01:21:18	
Categories		Order by	Most Rec	ent 🔹	Limit Playlist Result 20	*
Categories Switch to Advanced Mode		Order by	Most Rec	ent 🛛 🔻	Limit Playlist Result 20	* *

Save

## **Multiple Rules Based Playlist - Advanced Mode**

Use the Advanced Mode to create playlists based on multiple rules.

Name:	rules based playlist						
escription:							
ilters			Playlist Entries	-	-		
Search Entries		Q	Name	Туре	Plays	Duration	
Additional Filt	ers		boys shoes NEW		10	00:52	
Movies			Girls swinging NEW		3	00:54	
Test_my_girl	8		My test-webcam video	Ħ	1	00:11	
My boys Distribution			zoe beach		0	00:00	
Categories			my_cuties		0	00:00	
All (30)		-	The Biggest Runner!	Ħ	0	00:33	
🖂 Aqua	rium (1)	=	Titanic in 5 Seconds	<b>H</b>	0	00:11	
🖂 childr	en kids (2)			Entries: 20 Duration: 10	:54		
exam	ples (9)						
🖃 ex	cample1 (9)	•	Order by Most	Played V Limit	Playlist Result	20	

#### To create/add a multiple rules based playlist

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Playlists tab.
- 2. Select Add Rules Based Playlist.
- 3. Click Switch to Advanced Mode.
- 4. Enter a Name for your playlist (required).
- 5. Click Add Rule to create a new playlist rule. (See Creating a Rules Based Playlist to learn about creating rules.)

New Rule	New Rule Based Playlist ?? 8				
*Name:	rules based playlist				
Description:					
Туре		Order by		Limit	
r					
1					
Add Rule	Remove Rule Edit Rule	Length	Entries Count 0		
			Save		

- 6. Add additional rules.
- 7. Use the Remove Rule and Edit Rule buttons to make changes to your list of rules.

llame:	My new playlist 3	My new playlist 3		
escription:				
Туре	Order by	Limit		
Media Type VideoVideo MixAudioImage	Most Viewed	20		
Media Type ∀ideo∀ideo MixAudioImage	Highest Rated	33		
ledia Type ∀ideo∀ideo MixAudioImage	Most Recent	15		
Add Rule Remove Rule Edit R	Ile Length 01:16:23 Entries			

Rules are applied to the playlist in the order they appear. Use the arrows to change the order of the rules.

## **Additional Playlist Configuration**

Other actions that you may apply to playlists include:

- Creating Multi-tab Playlists
- Deleting a Playlist
- Removing Videos from a Playlist
- Customizing Additional Features for Playlists

## **Creating a Player with Multi-tab Playlists**

A Multi-tab Playlist contains multiple tabs, each containing a different playlist.

#### To create a multi-tab playlist

 Select the Studio Tab and then select New Player – Multiple Horizontal Playlist or Multiple Vertical Playlist.

The **Basics** tab is displayed.

- 2. Design and configure your playlist. See Designing and Configuring a New Player or Playlist.
- 3. Select the Content tab and add pre-existing playlists to your new Multiple Playlist.

Use the arrows to select from the list of All playlists and move them to the Playlist tabs list.

4. Save Changes to complete the process.

	All Playlists (as created in th	e Content tab):			Playlist Tabs (each playlist rep	resents a new tab):		
natures	Name	Playlist Type	Created At		Name		Playlist Type	Created Date
Ivertising	Most recent videos	Rule Based	30-May-2012 17:10					
ivertising	Most popular videos	Rule Based	30-May-2012 17:18					
yle	Recent Sea Videos	Rule Based	30-May-2012 17:18					
	Wy images	Rule Based	30-May-2012 17:18	.452025				
ontent								
						•		
							T	ital Playlists: 0

The players will appear in the Multiplayer List. Each playlist is displayed in a new tab.

## **Deleting a Playlist**

#### To delete a playlist

- 1. Go to the Content tab and then select the Playlists tab.
- **2.** Select the playlist in the workspace and click Delete.

## **Removing Videos from a Playlist**

#### To remove videos from a manual playlist:

- 1. Go to the Content tab and then select the Playlists tab
- **2.** Select the playlist.
- **3.** Select one or more videos from the Playlist Entries and use the horizontal arrows to move them to the Entries table.

Removing a video from a playlist does not delete it from your content library.

You cannot remove a video from a rules based playlist directly. Instead, you can:

- Modify the tags of the video so that the video no longer has any of the rules based playlist's tags.
- Modify the tags of the playlist so that they no longer include any of the video's tags.
- Delete the video.

## **Customizing Additional Features for Playlists**

When creating a player (either with one or multiple tabs) you will see additional configuration options under the Playlist Items section. Various types of information for each of the playlist items, such as number of plays, tags, rank etc. are displayed.

Use options in the Features section to customize the player's design.

## **Designing and Configuring a Player**

Use the Studio tab to create configurations and design players and playlists. You can add, remove and adjust multiple buttons and features, and create a look to match your site. A playlist is a collection of videos that are grouped together in a particular order for playback in the Kaltura Player. After you've created your playlist, you can assign your playlist to a player.

## **Player List**

The Studio tab displays the list of the players defined in the system. The default players that are included within the system, as well as players defined and created by administrators via the KMC are displayed. A default playlist is automatically created for a new player based on the most played entries for the Partner ID.

The Studio contains the following templates of players:



A studio template is a collection of features of a specific Kaltura Player configuration. The template is actually a collection of the player uiConf and another .xml file called features.xml. For more information, see here.



#### Workflow:

- 1. Select the Type of Player.
- 2. Configure the Player Basics Settings
- 3. Configure the Player Features.
- 4. Configure the Player Style.

## Select the Type of Player

To create a player

- 1. Select the Studio tab.
- Select the type of player to create. The Create New Player window is displayed.

## **Configuring the Player Basics Settings**

#### To configure the player's Basics settings

- 1. Select the Basics tab and enter an informative Player Name (required).
- 2. Set the Video Ratio select to keep or stretch your media to fit the player when the media and player aspect ratios are different.
- 3. Select Auto-play features.
- 4. Select the Playlist's controls.

If you are creating a Player and a Playlist you will also see the Playlist Controls. Check Automatically continue to the next entry, to play the playlist media consecutively.

For playlists with images, set the duration for images to be displayed during the continuous play of the playlist.

Playlist controls do not apply to the 508 Player.

## **Editing a Player**

The changes you make to an existing player will propagate to all sites where the player has been embedded, including syndicated players on other sites.

#### To edit a player

- 1. Select the Studio tab.
- Click on the relevant player in the Player List.
   Players created manually through Kaltura's professional services cannot be edited in this area.
- 3. Select Edit from the Select Action drop down.

Select Action	
Edit	
Select Content	
Duplicate	
Delete	

The player configuration Features tab is displayed. See Player Control Options.

4. Check the control options for the player and then Save Changes.

## Adding Content to a Player

#### To add content to a player

- 1. Select the Studio tab.
- 2. Highlight the relevant player in the Player List and select Select Content from the Select Action drop down.

Select Action
Edit
Select Content
Duplicate
Delete
i Elso Eustrias tels la fuene d

The Entries table from the Content tab is displayed.

- 3. Select an Entry. You can preview the entry using the player you started off with.
- 4. Click Preview and Embed and then grab the embed code and copy it to publish the player to your site.
- 5. Click Save and Close.

## **Duplicating a Player**

#### **To duplicate a player**

- **1.** Select the Studio tab.
- Click on the relevant player in the Player List.
   Players created manually through Kaltura's professional services cannot be edited in this area.
- **3.** Select Duplicate from the Select Action drop down.

Select Action	
Edit	
Select Content	
Duplicate	
Delete	

The player configuration Features tab is displayed. See Player Control Options.

4. Check the control options for the player and then Save Changes.

## **Deleting a Player**

Deleting a player eliminates it from all the locations where the player has been previously embedded. For example, if you have embedded a player using this design on your site or an external site, after you delete it from the Player List, the player will no longer appear and a blank area is displayed on the website.

#### To delete a player

- 1. Select the Studio tab.
- 2. Click on the relevant player in the Player List.
- 3. Select Delete from the Select Action drop down.

Select Action	X
Edit	
Select Content	
Duplicate	
Delete	

## **508-Compliant Video Player**

The 508 compliant video player includes functionality and interface design that support federal accessibility requirements as outlined in the Voluntary Product Accessibility Template. Please note that the 508 compliant player has limited functionality.



- 1. Select the Studio tab.
- 2. Select 508 Single player Video,

The Create New Player window is displayed.

- 3. In the Basic tab:
  - a. Enter an informative Player Name (required).
  - b. Set the Video Ratio select to keep or stretch your media to fit the player when the media and player aspect ratios are different.
  - c. Select Auto-play features.
- 4. In the Features tab:
  - a. Select the Player Controls.
  - b. Select the Subtitles and Transcriptions Options.



The player includes:

- Support for captions file in timed text or SRT formats for the video/audio file
- Support for an audio description in a standardized format for the video/audio file
- Hidden text elements for every non-text element (for screen readers)
- Tooltips
- Keyboard tabbing and controls
- No color coding information
- High contrast controls
- No draggable controls

## **Configuring the Player Advertising Settings**

#### To configure the player advertising settings

- 1. Select the Studio tab and then select the Advertising tab.
- 2. Select the Player.
- 3. Toggle on Yes to Request ads for this player. See Advertising and Ad Networks.
- 4. Fill in the fields that define how the player handles advertisements, and click Save Changes.

## **Configuring the Player Features**

The Features tab is made up of different sections, controlling the various features of the player.

Use the options in this tab to select the features (buttons, layers and modules) to be included in your player. The main screen is divided into the Features List on the left and the Preview Pane on the right. As you select your features from the list, you can preview the changes in real time in the preview pane on the right.

## **Features List**

The Features List contains the list of configurable features (buttons, layers and modules) available for this player. Checking the box next to any feature allows you to preview it in the Preview Pane. Most of the features have in-depth configuration options.

#### To view and customize the player different features

- 1. Select the Studio tab and then select a player.
- 2. Select the Features tab.
- 3. Click the options link next to each feature name.

Features are grouped by their type/usage:

#### Controls

The Controls area includes basic player features, such as title text, play, scrubber and more. You can also access each of these features using the JavaScript API.



#### **Viral & Distribution**

The Viral & Distribution area includes features that assist in content distribution, such as the download and share buttons. Note that the download button only supports downloads of single video files and does not support mix downloads - contact Kaltura Professional Services to enable download of mix content.



#### **UGC & User Interaction**

The UGC & User Interaction area includes participatory features such as media uploading and remixing.



#### **Subtitles and Transcriptions**

In the Subtitles and Transcriptions area, you can select the type of captions files to use. See Setting Up Captions for Display.

Creating and Customizing Playlists and Players

Con	Controls			
Viral & Distribution				
UGC	& User Interaction			
Subtitles & Transcriptions				
	Subply Component*	<u>Options</u>		
	Captions on video	<u>Options</u>		
	Captions for accessibility	<u>Options</u>		

#### **Related Videos Gallery**

Displays a gallery of related videos. See Related Videos Gallery.

#### **Custom Buttons**

The Custom Buttons area requires a higher level of expertise, and enables you to customize your player via JavaScript. Buttons evoke pre-defined JavaScript functions.

#### **Additional Parameters and Plugins**

To simplify the management of many of the player features, Kaltura has implemented the "UIVars" to override and configure player features.

Kaltura UIVars are an incredibly powerful feature of the Kaltura Players that h allows publishers to pre-set or override the value of any FlashVar (object level parameters), show, hide and disable existing UI element, add new plugins and UI elements to an existing player and modify attributes of all the player elements. For more information see How to use the Kaltura Player Studio's Additional parameters and plugins.

Additional parameters and plugins				
Add additional parameters to your player				
Paste your plug-in line here:				
go				
Key-value table:				
Add Remove Delete all				
key				
value				
Override flashvar of the same name				
key				
value				
Override flashvar of the same name				

#### Playlist Items (For players with playlist)

The Playlist Items area allows you to select which information is presented for each item on the playlist (for example, show thumbnail, rank, tags and more).

#### **Preview Pane**

The Preview Pane enables you to preview the selections you make in the Features List area as well as define the player size and preview the player in different states (during play, pause, end, etc.).

#### **Player Size**

Set the player size by selecting the width. The player height will adjust accordingly based on the width and the video screen ratio selected in the Template Tab.

#### Auto Preview

In the Studio tab the player is automatically rendered every time you change a control. Uncheck Autopreview to discontinue this behavior.

#### **Preview States Buttons**

These buttons enable you to preview the player in different states: before play, during play, paused and end screen. Alternatively you can simply play the demo content within the player, pause the video manually, etc.



1. Select the Features tab.

#### Select Features from List:

Controls	
Viral & Distribution	
UGC & User Interaction	
Subtitles & Transcriptions	
Custom Buttons*	
Additional parameters and plugins	

- 2. Expand the menus to configure your player. Any changes you make will appear in the preview area. (Click the Preview button to see the changes.)
- 3. Click Save Changes.

#### **Examples**

The following player displays an example of the default player design with a watermark display.





**NOTE:** This sample presents only one of many set-up scenarios. There are many configuration options within this section.

#### To change where the watermark is displayed in a player

- 1. Select Controls, see Player Control Options, check Your Watermark and then click Options.
- 2. In the Watermark Location on the video drop-down menu select Top Left.
- 3. Click Preview and then Apply to confirm your choice.

<ul> <li>Iterize</li> <li>Arterizeing</li> <li>Strie</li> <li>Bard your player with your own hop dig high yead as the date. Used is not be vide. Uplad an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the date and the more than the date. Uplate an image to a the date and the da</li></ul>	Create New Pla	yer	0 0
Features       Location on the web and provide the link below.         Advertising       Watemark URL         http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Vatemark and/op page url       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Mytemark and/op page url       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Watemark nucles/       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Watemark and page url       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Mytemark and page url       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Watemark and page url       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Mytemark and page url       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Watemark and page url       Http://www.katura.com/content/uluion/fikatura/mice         Mytemark and the status an	Basics		, ,
Advertising     Valuemark       Style     Improve watatura com/contentuluion filtaturatura       Vatermark landing page uri     Improve watatura com/       Improve watatura com/     Vatermark location on the video       Vatermark location on the video     Improve watatura com/       Vatermark location on the video     Improve watatura com/ <td>Features</td> <td></td> <td>Player Size: 560 🔺 x 395 🐥 Preview 🗹 Auto preview</td>	Features		Player Size: 560 🔺 x 395 🐥 Preview 🗹 Auto preview
Style       Improve Malar Activation Control model and and and concentrol malar and the descent and the style optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Vietnamic location on the video.       Improve Malar and Concentrol malar and the descent and the synce optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Vietnamic location on the video.       Improve Malar and Concentrol malar and the descent and the synce optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Vietnamic location on the video.       Improve Malar and Concentrol malar and the descent and the synce optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Apply       Cancel         Apply       Cancel         Vietnamic location of the synce optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Concent optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Apply       Cancel         Malar and concent optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Concent optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.         Concent optimize the video physer size so that video into a one of those.	Advertising	Watermark URL	Vídeo screen size: 560 x 315
Watermark location on the video:	Style		t is recommended that you optimize the video player size so that video
		Watermark location on the video: Bottom Left Bottom Right Top Left Top Right	

#### To change the label of the Share button

- 1. Select Viral & Distribution; see Player Viral and Distribution Options.
- 2. Check the Share button and click Options.
- 3. In the Label field, enter new text (for example, Share Now!).
- 4. (Optional) In the Tooltip field, enter new text.
- 5. In the Preview area, click the Preview button to see the changes.
- 6. On the Share Button pane, click Apply to confirm your choice and return to the Features list.
- 7. Click Save Changes.



#### To add a download button to the video area only

- 1. Select Viral and Distribution.
- 2. Check Download button feature and click Options.
- 3. Clear the Controls Area option.
- 4. Under Location & Playing States, check Video Area.
- 5. Under Video Area, check or clear playing states to determine when to display the download button in the video area.
- 6. In the Preview area, click the Preview button to see the changes.
- 7. On the Download Button pane, click Apply to confirm your choice and return to the Features list.
- 8. Click Save Changes.



#### **To change a Full Screen button in the control area of a player to text button**

- 1. In the Edit Player or Create New Player window, select the Features tab.
- 2. On the Controls menu, check Full Screen Button and then click Options.
- 3. On the Full Screen Button pane:
  - o Check Controls Area.
  - o In the Display in controls area drop-down menu, select Label.
  - o (Optional) In the Button Label field, enter new text.
- 4. (Optional) In the Tooltip fields, enter new text.
- 5. In the Preview area, click the Preview button to see the changes.
- 6. On the Full Screen Button pane, click Apply to confirm your choice and return to the Features list.
- 7. Click Save Changes.

Create New	r Player	
Basics		A Draviou
Features Style	Full Screen Button         This button allows users to which to full screen mode, and back to regular mode.         Location & Playing States:         Image: Video Area         Before play         During play, when mouse is on screen         When paused         End play         Octrois Area         Display in controls area as:         Label         Tooltip Text:	<ul> <li>Preview</li> <li>Player Size: 370 * × 300 * Preview</li> <li>Video screen size: 370 × 270</li> <li>Video Ratio: 16: 11.67</li> <li>Standard video ratios are 16:9 and 4:3. tis recommended that you optimize the video playe ratio is one of those.</li> </ul>
	Toggle fullscreen	▼ • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

## **Configuring the Player Style**

Use the Style tab to select the theme, colors and fonts for your player.

#### To configure the player style

- **1.** Select the Style Tab.
- 2. Under Style and Color, select **Dark** or **Light** in the Select theme drop-down menu.
- 3. Under Control bar buttons and On-video buttons, click the small colored square next to each option to open a color picker. For each option, select a color or enter a color value.

Basics		
Timber 1	Style and Color	Preview
Features	Select theme: dark =	Player Size: 370 * × 300 * Preview
Style		
	Control bar buttons	Video screen size: 370 x 270
	Color of Icons and labels	Video Ratio: 16:11.67 Standard video ratios are 16:9 and 4:3. It is recommended that you optimize the video playe
	Mouse over color	4:2.91 ratio is one of those.
	On-video buttons	lr
	On-video buttons color	nark
	On-video mause over color	
	On-video icons and labels color	Play Share Now! download
	Font	
	Arial 👻	
		creating together

- 4. Under Font, select a font in the drop-down menu.
- 5. In the Preview area, click the **Preview** button to see the changes.
- 6. Click Save Changes.
- 7. After you define your player template, features and style, click Save Changes to complete your player configuration and design.

Your new playe	er is displa	yed in the Pl	ayers List.			
Kaltura	Dashboard	Content Studio	Settings Analytics	_		
Players List						
In this page you can customize the players on the left for editing.	look and the functionality o	f your players. You can design a	nd configure a new player or select	one of the		
players on the left for editing.	ID	Save Date	Size	Mode	Basics	Actions
My Player	1257402	2010-02-22 10:52:47	370×300	Wizard	Player	Select Action
My New Player	1257342	2010-02-22 10:24:59	700×290	Wizard	Playlist	Select Action
test	1251602	2010-02-18 15:00:56	400×330	Wizard	Player	Select Action 🔻
Chromless	1251442	2010-02-18 14:08:12	400×300	Wizard	Player	Select Action 🔻

## CHAPTER 5

## **Managing Metadata**

This section contains the following topics:

- Metadata
- Creating and Managing Content Categories
- Uploading Content and Setting Metadata
- Metadata and Related Files
- Kaltura Custom Metadata Functionality
- Managing Schemas

## **Entry Metadata**

Entry Metadata fields are used to tag, manage, search and expose content. You can populate out-of-thebox fields, or create your own custom metadata schema. Kaltura provides extensive asset management and metadata capabilities. Each media entry has a list of predefined metadata fields including: Name, Description, Tags, Categories, Thumbnails, Duration, Views, and other fields.

## **Types of Metadata**

Kaltura supports three types of metadata for its media assets.

- Technical metadata (read only) includes the technical attributes of the media file. For example, the file type, duration, file format. See KalturaMediaInfo in the API Documentation, for a full list of predefined fields.
- Basic metadata includes Name, Description, Tags, and Categories' fields. In addition, Kaltura
  allows referencing the media entry using an external identifier which can be stored in the
  Reference ID field.
- 3. Custom metadata includes custom fields, defined under one or more schemas, which allow enhancing any media object into a custom business object.

Commercial users, please contact your account manager to enable this feature in your account.

Technical metadata, also known as system metadata, is generated automatically during ingestion and encoding of the file. All technical metadata information can be accessed through the Kaltura APIs.

Basic metadata is the information you input to the KMC through the Metadata tab. The Reference ID field allows storing an external identifier for supporting integrations with systems external to Kaltura or can be used to match a filename to an entry using the Drop Folder feature. See Automated Content Ingestion via a Drop Folder. Tags are comma separated and can be used as filters for searching through your content. Categories allow assigning media objects to taxonomies.

Custom metadata, also referred to as Custom Data is stored in a schema, also known as a metadata profile. You can create multiple schemas and assign them to any Kaltura object. The KMC supports schemas for entries and categories only. To extend the metadata of an entry, you need to create a custom schema for entries. See Adding a Schema.

Custom data is stored as an XSD schema that you can use to create, edit, and manipulate data. You can

also use the XSD schema to generate you own metadata interface. Custom data XSDs are account specific.

## **Metadata Actions**

You can manage assets and metadata through the:

- KMC UI You can edit basic and custom metadata for a single asset, or apply a change of a few basic metadata fields to multiple selected assets.
- KMC Entries Bulk upload (CSV/XML) You can add assets in batch, combining both media files and associated metadata. (See Bulk Upload and FTP Upload).
- Kaltura APIs All metadata-related functionality available through the KMC can also be performed using the Kaltura APIs. The APIs also expose additional functionality not available through the KMC. For more information see here.

## **Uploading Content and Setting Metadata**



Uploading Content and Setting Metadata Workflow:

- 1. Upload a media file then set its metadata.
- 2. Ingest a media file bundled with metadata (CSV, XML, API)
- 3. Prepare a metadata-only "draft" entry for future ingestion of media files.

## Upload a Media File and Set Its Metadata

To upload a media file and set its metadata

- 1. Go to the Upload tab.
- 2. Upload a media file. See The Upload Tab.
- 3. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 4. Select a Video/Audio entry.
- 5. In the Metadata tab, add or edit the following metadata information.

Metadata						
Thumbnails	Name:	The Other Guys New Clip - Like a Puppet	Entry ID:	0_g7lt3cy8		
mumbhans	Description:					
Access Control						19
Scheduling	Tags:	mark wahlberg × will ferrell ×			lay	
Flavors						Z
Distribution	Categories: 🗸	Enter category names				<b>•</b>
Captions			► 00:00		00:49	🜒 🧩
ouptiono			Preview &	Embed	Clip This	Trim T
Advertisements	Reference ID:					
Related Files			Creator: Created on:	ariel.hitron@k 06/23/2012	altura.com	
			Landing Page:	00/23/2012		
Users			Lanung Page.			
			Туре:	Video	Duration:	00:49
			Moderation:	Auto approved		
			Plays:	0		

- a. Name
- b. Description (Optional)
- c. Tags
- d. Categories
- e. Reference ID (Optional).
- 6. If you have Custom Data for entries, you can edit the Custom Data fields for the entry. For multiple schemas, use the drop down Jump To menu to select the schema for the entry. See Upload a Media File and Set Its Metadata.
- 7. Click Save & Close.

The Entry ID assigned to a metadata entry can be used to assign metadata to multiple files. See Editing and Creating Transcoding Profiles.

## Ingest a Media File Bundled with Metadata (CSV, XML, API)

To enable more advanced content ingestion options, the provided CSV/XML samples can be extended to include multiple/custom metadata items, account specific settings, update action and advanced content ingestion options (for example, ingestion of multiple transcoding flavors, multiple thumbnails etc.) Each item element within the XML, and each line in the CSV, represents a single entry created in the publisher account. Each entry will be populated with the metadata listed in its item element and the content referenced from it. When submitted, the bulk upload XML/CSV is validated on the Kaltura server. The validation includes an inspection of the XML structure, and verification of elements' structure and order compliance with Kaltura's bulk upload XSD (XML schema). For more information see Bulk Upload and FTP Upload.

#### To ingest a media file bundled with Metadata

- 1. Select the Upload tab.
- 2. Click Download CSV/XML Samples.
- 3. Enter the metadata in the relevant fields.
- 4. For more information on the XML Custom data upload see the following: http://www.kaltura.com/api\_v3/xsdDoc/?type=bulkUploadXml.bulkUploadXML#elementcustomDataItems

 $http://www.kaltura.com/api_v3/xsdDoc/?type=bulkUploadXml.bulkUploadXML#element-customData$ 

## Prepare a Metadata-only "Draft" Entry for Future Ingestion of Media Files



- 1. Go to the Upload tab.
- 2. Prepare a Video/Audio Entry.

To add the content (media source file) into the metadata entry

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- Select a Draft (No Media) entry. The Edit Entry- Draft Entry form is displayed.
- 3. Select the Flavors tab.
- 4. Add the media source file. Select from one of the following options:
- Upload Files upload from your desktop
- Import Files import from the web.
  - $\circ$  ~ Enter the File URL and select the Transcoding Flavor.
  - o Click Import.

## **Metadata and Related Files**

Related Files are relevant to metadata in relation to transcript and captions/subtitles. Captions and Subtitles files are considered as metadata files that are time based and related you an entry. For more information, see Uploading and Modifying Related Files.

## Kaltura Custom Metadata Functionality

You can create a unique metadata schema. The entire schema management is done via the KMC UI. You can add fields of the following types:

- Text field values are free text
- **Text select list** this is similar to the text field, also known as List of Values, This option allows the publisher to define a predefined list of fields to be used. After you enter the values, you are presented with a select box element to select a value from the existing list (for example countries,

months)

- Date a date field
- Entry ID list a list to a different entry (asset) that can be used to create compound structure. Examples of this would be, Related Videos, linking trailer to full-length film etc.

The following is an example of a Custom Metadata Schema.

Name*	User Manual Demo							
Description	for docs							
Apply To*:	Select Object Type	•						
ownload XSD so	Entries							
System Name	Categories Name	Description	Full Description	Туре	Max Values	Searchable	Position	
TeaserTitle	Teaser Title			Text	1	Yes	<b>~ ~ X</b>	(
FullTitle	Full Title			Text	1	Yes	~ ~ X	Add Field
ArticleText	Article Text			Text	1	Yes		
PublishDate	Publish Date			Date	1	No	~ ~ X	
PublishStatus	Publish Status			Text Select List	1	Yes	^ <b>~</b> X	
Copyright	Copyright			Text	1	Yes	∧ ∨ X	
Authors	Authors			Text	Unlimited	Yes	^ <b>~</b> X	
RelatedLinks	Related Links			Text	Unlimited	Yes	~ • ×	
YouTubeDistribut	··· You Tube Distributio			Text Select List	Unlimited	Yes	• • ×	
RelatedEntries	Related Entries			Entry-id List	Unlimited	Yes		

#### **Using Custom Data for Entries**

As a best practice we recommend richly mapping your media assets with metadata to make your assets more findable and better used as business objects.

You can fill in the values for the defined schema for each media asset (entry). The UI elements are built per the field type supporting text fields, checkboxes for multiple selections (from predefined values list), date selector (for date fields), text list (for multiple value fields), and linked entries (for creating structure).

The schemas you customize may be used for viewing and editing, as well as for filtering, search, and syndication rules. Custom data may be used as a condition for distributing content. For example if you are trying to distribute data and a custom data field has been defined and expected by the distribution channel, if the custom data is not received, the content will not be distributed.

Searching (and creating syndication rules) by a custom field is integrated into the KMC UI and workflows.

#### **Using Custom Data for Categories**

Using Custom Data for categories is useful when you need to set the category itself with non-standard metadata. You can manage metadata for display on the channel page in your application, within the category object and not through entries' metadata. You can create complex filters to control which categories and channels to display in different areas of your website, and specify other options.

Creating and managing categories' custom data is identical to how entries' custom data schemas and values are managed and set in the KMC. Custom Data schemas should be set to apply on entries or on
categories and cannot apply on both.



**NOTE:** The categories' custom data is not inherited by the entries associated with each category. Categories' custom data is solely related to the category object and applies on category related Kaltura API calls only.

# **Managing Schemas**

A schema is a model for describing the structure of information. Each data schema holds a list of customized fields. An XSD (XML Schema Definition) provides a way to describe and validate data in an XML environment.

# Adding a Schema



- 1. Select the Settings tab and then select the Custom Data tab.
- 2. Click Add New Schema.

The New Metadata Schema window appears.

- 3. Enter a Name and Description.
- 4. Select what entity to apply the metadata to. The options are Entries or Categories.
- 5. Enter the System Name (optional). This field is required if you are uploading content using Bulk XML files or if you need access to the schema via the API.
- 6. Click Add Field.
- 7. Add custom data fields.

New Metada	ata Schema							8
Name*								
Description								
Apply To*:	Estrice -	System Na	ime:					
	Entries <b>v</b>	System Ne	inc.					
Download XOD 3	Categories							
System Name	Name	Description	Full Description	Туре	Max Values	Searchable	Position	
								Add Field
			ſ	Save Changes				

# **Adding Custom Data Fields**

#### To add custom data fields

- 1. Select the Settings tab and then select the Custom Data tab.
- 2. Add a schema. See Adding a Schema.
- 3. Click Add Field.

The New Field window appears.

New Field	<b>?</b> 8
Field Name:	
Field Type:	Text
	Text
Max Number of Values:	Date
Searchable?	Text Select List
ocal chapter	Entry-id List
Description:	
Full Description:	
i un boooriptioni	
	Save

- 4. Select the Field type. See Kaltura Custom Metadata Functionality.
- 5. Enter values for the field or list.

k.

- 6. (Optional) Add a Description, or Full Description.
- 7. Click Save. The Custom Fields List is displayed.
- 8. Use the up and down arrows to change the order of the fields. The following is an example of entering data as a Text Select list for the field Publish Values.

ew Field		
Field Name:	Publish Values	
Field Type:	Text Select List	~
Optional Values:	Submitted for review	
enter the values, one per line	Pending review	
	Approved	
	Flagged	
Max Number of Values:	Unlimited	~
Searchable?	Yes	~
Description:		
Full Description:		

The following screen displays a schema with an entry ID chosen.

ame*	test-for docs							
escription	adding fields for falcon	categories						
pply To*:	Entries 💌							
ownload XSD s	chema							
System Name	Name	Description	Full Description	Туре	Max Values	Searchable	Position	
PublishValues	Publish Values			Text Select List	Unlimited	Yes	<b>~ ~ X</b>	
RelatedEntries	Related Entries			Entry-id List	1	Yes	^ <b>v</b> X	Add Field

### **Setting Values for Custom Metadata Fields - Per Entry**

#### To add values to the custom metadata fields

- 1. Select the Content tab and select Entries.
- 2. Click on entry in the Entries table.

The custom data is displayed in the Metadata tab.

**3.** Add or modify the Custom Data values and click Save & Close.

The following screen demonstrates the values insertion page within a specific schema. Use the scroll to view the entire schema information.

Edit Entry - open_	_shut				_	<b>9</b> 8
Metadata						
Thumbnails	Name: Description:	open_shut		Entry ID: 0	0_2rn0a468	
Access Control	boonpuon					
Scheduling	Tags:	Enter tags			Play	
Flavors						
Distribution	Categories: 🙎	Enter category names				
Captions				Preview &	Embed Clip Thi	s Trim This
Advertisements	Reference ID:	1		Creator:	debbie.zioni@kaltura.com	
Related Files				Created on:	06/05/2012	
Users	User Manua	Demo		Landing Page:		
	Teaser Title:	Demo		Туре:	Video Duration:	00:34
				Moderation:	Auto approved Clipped from	m: 0_ehtb0
	Full Title:			Plays:	0	
	Article Text:				< Previous Entry	Next Entry >
	Publish Date:	15				
	Publish Status:	Select a value	•			
	Copyright:					
	Authors:		× Remove			
		+ Add				
	Related Links:		X Remove	8		
		S	Save Save & Close			

#### **To add or remove related entries**

- 1. Create a schema and add the Related Entries field. See Adding Custom Metadata Fields.
- 2. Select an Entry and select the Metadata tab.
- 3. Scroll to the Related Entries field and click +Add/remove Linked Entries.

4.

Metadata			A	Entry ID:	0_2rn0a468		
[humbnails	Publish Date:	(15)				3	
Access Control	Dublich Status						
Scheduling	Publish Status:	Select a value	*		Pla	IV III	
	Copyright:						
lavors							
)istribution	Authors:		× Remove				
aptions		+ Add				1400	
aptiono			_	Preview &	Embed	Clip This	Trim This
dvertisements	Related Links:		× Remove				
elated Files		+ Add		Creator: Created on:	debbie.zioni@k 06/05/2012	altura.com	
sers	You Tube			Landing Page:	00/03/2012		
ISEIS	Distribution:						
	Related Entries:	+ Add/remove Linked Entries		Туре:	Video	Duration:	00:34
	Life is		_	Moderation:	Auto approved	Clipped from:	0_ehtb0
			A Back to Top	Plays:	0		
		Save	Save & Close		<	Previous Entry	Next Entry 3
ve the Polet	od Entrios fro	m the Entries table to	the Selected	Entries list	and click S	210	

Filters	Entr	ies Table					Selec	ted Entries	3		
Search Entries	۹ 🗆	Name	Plays	Duration				Name	Туре	Plays	Duration
Filter by Categories		ls_test	0	00:00	Â						
All Categories (No Filter)	*	10_1001	, in the second se	00.00							
image		kisses_NEV	0	00:54	н.						
video video					ч.						
hd content											
video		open_shut	0	00:34		• •					
fish											
fish		open_shut	0	01:00							
dz-entitlement			-								
MediaSpace Root	Y										
Search Categories		open_shut	0	00:11							
Additional Filters					Y						
User Manual Demo		1 1-12 of	12	Show rows: 25 💌				En	tries: 0 D	ouration: 00:	00

Save

# **Setting Values for Metadata Fields - Per Category**

Custom Data values are set to categories in a similar way they are set for entries, but from the metadata tab of the Edit Category window.

#### To add values to the custom metadata fields

- 1. Select the Content tab and select Categories.
- Click on a category in the Categories table. The custom data is displayed in the Metadata tab.
- Add or modify the Custom Data values and click Save & Close.

The following screen demonstrates the values insertion page within a specific schema. Use to scroll to view the entire schema information.

Edit Category - M	ly Channel					98
Metadata	Category ID	: 162911				
Entitlements	Name:	My Channel				
	Description:					
	Tags:	Enter tags				
	Reference ID:					
	Channel Type:	Select a value	-	,		
	Channel Rules:					
	Expiration Date:	15				
			A Back t	ю Тор		
		Save	Save & Close		Previous Category	Next Category >

# **Related Videos Gallery**

The Related Videos feature can be used to display and share related videos to your viewers. Related videos are displayed according to your selection, either when a video is completed. When you select a related video, the viewer is either redirected to the specified URL, or the related video is loaded in the player.

	То	configure	Related	Videos
--	----	-----------	---------	--------

- **1.** Select the source.
- 2. Configure Autoplay for Related Videos.

## **Related Videos Source**

The source of the related videos display may be from one of the following:

**Automatic-** Automatically generated by Kaltura (default). The player will fall back to this option if you specify another Source that does not return a minimum of 12 related items.

You can view this information regarding how Kaltura will generate the Related Videos for all videos watched using this player. Please note: in order to define which Entries will be used when Kaltura is searching for related videos, you can change the configuration in the below specified Playlist

#### To select automatically generated related videos

• Enter the Playlist Id.

**Reference Ids** - Related videos are contained in a list of Reference Ids from either pre-defined in a custom metadata field or passed to the Player at the application page level as a Flashvar or via the KDPs JavaScript API.

To select related videos using the Reference ID fields

• Enter the Reference Ids fields as follows: {mediaProxy.entryMetadata.ReferenceIds}

**Global Playlist** - For all videos played with this player, use the same playlist as the source of the related videos.

To use the global playlist as the source for related videos

• Enter the Playlist Id.

**Entry Id List** - For each video, a list of Entry Ids is manually entered in a custom metadata field of type 'Entry-id List'.

#### To use the Entry Ids as the source for related videos

 Fill out the following fields: {mediaProxy.entryMetadata.EntryIds}

### **Configure Autoplay for Related Videos**

#### Automatically begin playing the related videos

After the current video has finished playing, the player automatically begins to play the related videos. Auto-play begins if the user did not interact with the player for the set number of seconds, and this option is enabled.



- 1. Enable the feature Select True.
- 2. Enter the number of seconds to wait until the related video is played.
- 3. Select which related video should be auto-played.
  - o First in Gallery

- o Random from Gallery
- 4. Specify the Actions for when you select a related video from a gallery.
  - Load video in player
  - Load URL in Browser enter the URL patter
  - o Call JavaScript on page enter the JavaScript function name
- 5. Click Apply.

# CHAPTER 6

# Locating Content in the KMC

This section contains the following topics:

- Searching Through Entries
- Filtering Content in the Entries Table
- Searching Through Categories
- Filtering Categories in the Categories Table
- Searching Playlists

You can use categories, tags, or any of your custom metadata fields to locate content in the KMC.

# **Searching Through Entries**

The search box in the Entries page enables you to search for specific entries existing in your account.

#### To search for any word in the entry name, tags or text fields

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- Enter your search criteria and click the magnifying icon on the right, or press Enter. The search will apply on textual metadata fields, on the entry ID and on the User ID of the entry's owner. For canned lists use the Metadata Filters. You can search for content and then create playlists containing the filtered content.
- To create playlists based on filtered content
- 1. Search for content based on a filter.
- 2. Click Add Playlist to create a playlist.
- To clear the search box
- Click the X icon on the right.

# **Filtering Content in the Entries Table**

The list of entries can be filtered according to the parameters that are specified in the filter bars on the left side of the page. You can filter entries using the search criteria, specific categories, Additional Filters, or custom metadata based filters



**NOTE:** You can sort the Entries Table by clicking on the various columns or using the scroll bar. You can also select how many items to display per page (10 to 500).

### **Using Categories as Filters**

You can filter the entries in the Entries Table by selecting specific categories in the categories filter bar on the left side of the page.

You can open the Categories Filter Preferences from the preferences icon at the top right corner of the categories filter area. Your preferences will impact the behavior of the category filter.

Filter Preferences	8
<ul> <li>Display Entries associated with the selected category ONLY</li> <li>Display Entries associated with the selected category AND its sub-categories</li> </ul>	
Save	

You can navigate within the categories tree to select the categories you want to filter entries by. Each category selection refreshes the Entries Table.

You may also use the Search Categories field to search for categories you want to filter by, instead of navigating to these categories from the categories tree.

Entries	Entries
Filter by Categories	Filter by Categories
All Categories (No Filter)	All Categories (No Filter)
▼	MediaSpace
▼ □ site	myApplication
▶ Channels	
▼	
Sports	
Education	
Cool Videos	
News	
Events	
private	
myApplication	
Course Ontonening	
Search Categories	sports
Additional Filters	MediaSpace>site>galleries> <u>Sports</u>
My Custom Metadata for Entries	My Custom Metadata for Entries



**NOTE:** When a category has more than 1000 sub categories, the category cannot be expanded in the category tree. Use the Search categories option.

# **Using Additional Filters**

#### To use additional filters

- Click "Additional Filters" to open more filter options, including:
  - o Between any two specific dates
  - By media type (Audio, Video, Image, Video Mix, Live Stream)
  - o By Ingestion Status (Ready, No Media, Pending, Uploading, Transcoding, Error)
  - By duration Short clips (up to 4 minutes), Medium clips (4 to 20 minutes), Long clips (more than 20 minutes)
  - o By Original or Clipped entries original media, entries created by clipping
  - By Scheduling status (Past, Live now, Scheduled to go live at a later date, Scheduled between specified dates)
  - o By moderation status
  - o By Media Replacement Status
  - By Access Control Profile (See Access Control Profiles for more details.)
  - By video quality (Transcoding Flavor)
  - By Distribution Destination (See Distribution and Syndication for more details.)

You can filter content using a single or multiple criteria.

### Performing a Search Based on Metadata Fields

You can use custom fields to search for content and create playlists. To search textual fields, use the search box, for canned lists use the custom Metadata Filters. See Searching Playlists.

🔅 Kaltura	Dashboard		Content	Studio	Analytics	Settings	Adr
Entries Moderation	Playlists	Syndi	cation Cat	egories			
Entries		kaltu	<sup>ira</sup> 1		kaltura ×		
Filter by Categories			Thumbnail	ID	Name	Туре	Plays
Additional Filters User Manual Demo			Kaltura	0_iz2ovz7I	Sample Kaltura Animate		0
Publish Status 2			Keltura	0_r7md5dkp	<u>Sample Kaltura Logo</u>		0
Pending review Approved							
Flagged     You Tube Distribution	3						
Yes No							

Footnote	Label	Specification
1	Search text	Search text to apply to all textual custom data, for example teaser title, authors
2	Search filter for Publishing Status	For publishing status
3	Search filter for Distribution settings	For content based on distribution channel's settings

### **Entries Table Filter Indications**

When the Entries table is filtered by categories, filters and/or search criteria, indications for the selected filters are displayed above the Entries Table. You can remove a filter directly from this display by clicking on the x on the name of the filter.

🌞 Kaltura	Dashboard	Content Studio Analytics			Settings Administration		
Entries Moderation	Playlists S	yndication Categ	jories				
Entries		Search Entries	Q	Sports ×	Cool Videos ×		
Filter by Categories	**	Thumbnail II	D Nan	ne	Type Plays	Created On 🗸	

# **Searching Through Categories**

When managing your categories, the search box in the Categories page enables you to search for specific categories existing in your account.

To search for any word in the category name, tags or text fields

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Categories tab.
- Enter your search criteria and click the magnifying icon on the right, or press Enter. The search is applied on textual metadata and custom data field. For canned lists, use the Categories Metadata Filters.

# **Filtering Categories in the Categories Table**

When managing categories, the Categories Table can be filtered according to the parameters that are specified in the filter bars on the left side of the page. You can filter categories using the search criteria, by categories. For listing categories under a specific parent category, use Additional Filters or use the custom data based filters.

# **Using Categories as Filters**

When managing categories, you can filter the categories in the Categories Table by selecting specific categories in the categories filter bar on the left side of the page.

You can open the Categories Filter Preferences from the preferences icon at the top right corner of the categories filter area. Your preferences impact the behavior of the categories filter.

Filter Preferences	8
Display direct sub-categories of the selected category ONLY	
<ul> <li>Display ALL sub-categories of the selected category</li> </ul>	
Save	

You can navigate within the category tree to select the categories you want to filter the Categories Table by. Each selected category refreshes the Categories table.

You may also use the Search Categories field to search for categories you want to filter by, instead of navigating to the categories from the categories tree.

Categories	Categories
Filter by Categories ***	Filter by Categories **
All Categories (No Filter)	All Categories (No Filter)
<ul> <li>MediaSpace</li> <li>site</li> <li>channels</li> <li>galleries</li> <li>Sports</li> <li>Education</li> <li>Cool Videos</li> <li>News</li> <li>Events</li> <li>private</li> <li>myApplication</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>MediaSpace</li> <li>myApplication</li> </ul>
Search Categories Additional Filters	<mark>galler </mark> MediaSpace≻site> <u>qaller</u> ies



**NOTE:** When a category has more than 200 sub categories it cannot be expanded in the category tree. Use the Search categories option.

# **Using Additional Filters**

- To use additional filters
- Click "Additional Filters" to open more filter options, including:
  - o Created Between any two specific dates
  - By content privacy options (available with entitlement configuration only)
  - By category listings(available with entitlement configuration only)
  - By contribution policy(available with entitlement configuration only)
  - By the availability of specific end –user permissions(available with entitlement configuration only)

# **Categories Table Filter Indications**

When the Categories table is filtered by categories, metadata filters or search criteria, indications for the selected filters are displayed above the Categories Table. Click on the X to remove a filter directly from this display.

Entries	Moderation	Playlists	Syndication Categories
Catego	ories		Search Categories Q galleries × channels ×

# **Searching Playlists**

Use the Filters pane to search for playlists in your account. You can search for any word in the playlist name, tags or both. You can also filter by date by select a date range or by clicking the calendar icons on the Created between fields.

# CHAPTER 7

# **Managing Access Control Profiles**

This section contains the following topics:

- Access Control Profiles
- Creating an Access Profile
- Assigning an Access Control Profile to an Entry
- Content Scheduling

# **Access Control Profiles**

Kaltura supports several publication restrictions allowing limited access to content when business requirements dictate it. These restrictions can be placed on the entry level but can also be streamlined to be set automatically or on demand, on a group of items based on a set of criteria, during upload via a bulk upload CSV file, or during an update transaction using Kaltura's APIs. See Kaltura API documentation.

An Access Control Profile defines authorized and restricted domains where your content can or cannot be displayed, countries from which it can or cannot be viewed, white and black lists of IP addresses and authorized and unauthorized domains in which your media can be embedded. Use the Access Control tab to view existing profiles and create new ones.

Controlled access provides authentication and authorization capabilities. Developer authentication is done using a combination of the Partner ID and one of two "secrets", each providing a different set of authorization capabilities. In return, a Kaltura Session token ("KS") is generated, through which API calls can be made.

You can segregate your content based on your various user groups and audiences. You can create content channels to be accessed only by certain users, and allow other content items to be available to all. Access profiles also allow you to manage groups and users on your own identity.

To view Access Control settin	nas
-------------------------------	-----

• Select the Settings tab and then select the Access Control tab.

The Access Control Profiles window is displayed. A default access control profile that permits access to all is configured automatically.

\$ K	altı	ura	Dashboard Conte	nt Studio	Analytics	Settings Ac	Iministration	Upload 🧡	< Det
Acc	ount Se	ettings Inte	gration Settings Access Cont	rol Transcoding Set	ttings Custom Data	My User Settings	Account Upgrade		
cce	ess C	ontrol Prof	iles						
	Cess Co	ntrol Profile define	Description	ontent can appear, countrie	Domains	ved and security settings.	You can then select an a	Advanced Security	ach entry or group of entrie
		munic	beautipiton	created on		countries		Advanced Security	_
	3241	Default	default access control pr	Wed May 30 2012	Allow All	Allow All	Allow All		Add Profile
	3431	not usa	content to be viewed only	Mon Jun 11 2012	Allow All	Blocked:	Allow All		
	3421	only usa	content to be viewed only	Mon Jun 11 2012	Allow All	Authorized:	Allow All		
	ete				1-3 of 3			Show rows: 10 T	

# **Creating an Access Profile**

- To create an access control profile
- 1. Select the Settings tab and then select the Access Control tab. The Access Control Profiles window is displayed.

		ontrol Profile	To a construction of the second second second						
AC	ID	Name	Description	Created On	Domains .	Countries	IPs	an appropriate Access Control Profile for e Advanced Security	ach entry or group of entries.
	3241	Default	default access control pro	Wed May 30 2012	Allow All	Allow All	Allow All		Add Profile
	3431	not usa	content to be viewed only	Mon Jun 11 2012	Allow All	Blocked:	Allow All		Add Profile
	3421	only use	content to be viewed only	Mon Jun 11 2012	Allow All	Authorized	Allow All		

2. Click Add Profile.

The New Access Control Profile window is displayed.

New Access Control Profile	<b>?</b> 8
Access Control Profile Details	Â
*Profile Name:	
Description:	
Authorized Domains	
Which DNS domains are able to access the video?	
All domains	
Only in the following domains:	
Domains:	
+ Add another domain - Remove selected domains	
Block from the following domains:	Y
Create New	

- 3. Enter an informative Profile Name and Description for the profile.
- 4. Configure the Authorized Domains. See Restricting Domains.
- 5. Configure the Authorized Countries. See Restricting Countries for Viewing.
- 6. Configure the Authorized IP Addresses. See Restricting Views by IP Address.
- 7. Configure the Advanced Security. See Restricting Views with a Server Side Secret
- 8. Click Create New.

# **Editing an Access Profile**

	То	edit	an	access	control	profile
--	----	------	----	--------	---------	---------

- Select the Settings tab and then select the Access Control tab. The Access Control Profiles window is displayed.
- Select the access profile you want to edit.
   The Edit Access Control Profile window is displayed. Modify the profile according to the sections described in Creating an Access Profile.

### **Restricting Domains**

Kaltura's Access Control mechanism provides the means to restrict content playback from specific domains. This is useful to prevent scraping of content from your website or re-sharing of content on other sites that are not yours.

Domain restrictions allow you to define a "white list" of domains that allow only playback attempts of content placed on these domains to be granted. Any playback attempt via the Kaltura Dynamic Player placed on a domain *not* on this list will be denied. In the same manner a "black list" can be defined performing the opposite constraint. Any playback attempt from these domains will be denied. You can create a combination of both "white listed" and "black listed" domains.

#### To restrict content to specific domains.

In the Authorized Domains section, select one of the following options:

- Toggle All Domains content will display in all domains.
- Toggle Only in the following domains enter a site or list of approved sites that are allowed to display Kaltura content. See Add or Remove a Domain.
- Toggle Block from the following domains enter a domain or list of approved of domains that are not allowed to display Kaltura content. See Add or Remove a Domain.

#### Adding or Removing a Domain

#### 📃 To add a domain

In the Authorized Domains section, select one of the following options:

1. Click + Add another domain.

For example: kaltura.com	
Domain:	
Save	

- 2. Enter the domain name in the format of *company.com*
- To remove a domain
- 1. Select a domain from the listed domains.
- 2. Click the Remove selected domains.



3. Click Yes.

### **Restricting Countries for Viewing**

Geographic restrictions, similar to domain restrictions, allow you to define a "white list" or a "black list" of specific geographical locations, limiting or enabling playback attempts of content for users located in these locations. For example, a Kaltura Player entry assigned with geo-restrictions where the white list contains only Spain can be placed on any domain but will only be playable by viewers located in Spain.

#### To restrict content to specific countries

In the New/Edit Access Control Profile window, scroll down to the **Authorized Countries** section. Select one of the following options:

- Toggle Anywhere- content will be displayed in all countries.
- Toggle Only from the following countries- select a country or list of approved countries that will display content. See Add or Remove Geographic Regions (Countries).
- Toggle Block from the following Countries enter a country or list of approved of countries to exclude. See Add or Remove Geographic Regions (Countries).

#### Adding or Removing Geographic Regions (Countries)

- To add a geographic region
- 1. Click + Add Remove Countries.

Add/Remove Cour	tries		28
Countries List	А	llowed Countries	
Afghanistan	▲ Ξ		
Albania			
Algeria			
American Samoa	>>>		
Andorra			
Angola			
🔤 Anguilla			
Antarctica			
E Antinua and Dashuda	•		
	Save		

- 2. Use the scroll (Ctrl button for multiple selections) and select the countries from the Countries List.
- 3. Use the arrow buttons to transfer the selected countries to the Allowed Countries.
- 4. Click Save.
- To remove a geographic region
- 1. Click+ Add Remove Countries.

Add/Remove Count	ries				28
Countries List			Restr	icted Countries	
Afghanistan	▲ <u> </u>			American Samoa	
Albania					
Algeria					
Andorra		<u>&gt;</u>			
Angola		~			
Tanguilla					
Antarctica					
Antigua and Barbuda					
A	•				
		Save			

- 2. Use the scroll (Ctrl button for multiple selections) and select the countries from the Restricted Countries.
- **3.** Use the arrow buttons to transfer the selected countries to the Allowed Countries.
- 4. Click Save.

### **Restricting Views by IP Address**

You can restrict content view by IP addresses or ranges and determine which IP ranges will be allowed to view the content.

#### To restrict Views by IP Address

In the New/Edit Access Control Profile window, scroll down to the **Authorized IPs** section. Select one of the following options:

- Toggle All IPs content will be displayed for all IP addresses.
- Toggle Only from the following IPs- select a range of approved IPs that will display content. See Add or Remove IP Addresses.
- Toggle Block from the following IPs- enter a range of approved IPs that should be excluded from content viewing. See Add or Remove IP Addresses.

#### Adding or Removing IP Addresses

To add or block IP addresses

1. Click + Add Another IP.



- 2. Use the notation indicated to enter IP addresses.
- 3. Click Save.

#### To remove IP addresses

- 1. Highlight the IPs you want to remove from the restricted list.
- 2. Click +Remove Selected IPs. A warning message is displayed.
- 3. Click Yes.

# **Restricting Views with a Kaltura Session**

Often, the user authentication/entitlement mechanism that decides whether a user is entitled to access a specific media entry or not, will reside outside of Kaltura. When the authentication mechanism resides outside Kaltura, we recommend that you use an Advanced Kaltura Session (KS) based Access Control mechanism, that permits access to the media only when a valid Kaltura Session is provided. .The external entitlement mechanism will then generate the valid Kaltura Session when users should be permitted to view the content.

The session is created using a secret. The external entitlement mechanism will then generate the valid KS when users should be permitted to view the content. Common examples include -

When implementing paid content where the payment gateway is not Kaltura, the server processing the payment will be the mechanism deciding on entitlement. After the payment is processed, the payment server creates a valid Kaltura Session by calling the Kaltura API and passes that KS to the Kaltura player.

When implementing a single-sign-on and permissions mechanism using LDAP or other authentication mechanism outside of Kaltura, the server responsible for user authentication contains the entitlement logic. The authentication server will call the Kaltura API and generate a valid KS when appropriate.

A Kaltura Player marked with tokenized access requires a "session token" to be created and provided during every playback. A session token can only be created by a developer possessing valid credentials and expires after a limited amount of time. Thus, even if an attempt to grab the item's direct URL is successful, the playback session will soon expire and without possession of the valid credentials, regeneration of a new token will not be possible.

This option is useful to prevent scraping of content from your website or re-sharing of content on other

sites that are not yours and provides an additional amount of security to content display.

### **Pay-Per-View**

You can enable paid programming with a video preview, and easy, on-the-fly payment options for full video access.



• Check Secure viewing of this video with Kaltura Session (KS).

#### To enable a free preview

- 1. Check Free Preview.
- 2. Enter the amount of time in seconds for the free preview display.

# Assigning an Access Control Profile to an Entry

You can assign an Access Control Profile to an entry.

#### To assign an access control profile to an entry

- 1. Go to Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. Click on the entry to which you want to assign an Access Control Profile.
- 3. Go to the Access Control tab and select an existing profile from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Click Save & Close to complete the process.

Metadata	Access Control Profile:	only usa	5	Add Profile	
Thumbnails	Profile Name:	Default	13		
Access Control		not usa			
Access Control	Description:	only usa			
Scheduling	Domains:	Any Domain			
Flavors	Countries:	Allow Countries: United States			
Distribution	IPs:	Any IP			
Captions	Advanced Security:				
Advertisements					
Related Files					
Users					

### Assigning an Access Profile to a Bulk Upload

A default access profile is included with the KMC. After you create an Access Profile, an ID is created and listed in the Access Control page.

#### To assign an access profile to a bulk upload

- Set the ID from the Access Control List to the accessControlProfileId in your CSV
- Set the profile ID from the Access Control List to the accessControlld in your XML file.

# **Content Scheduling**

Content Scheduling determines when your media entries will be permitted for viewing ("sunrise") and when access should be automatically discontinued ("sunset"). You can set specific scheduling parameters for your content. You can set the entry to be available for display at any time (for example, no schedule limitations) or you can set the entry to be available during a limited timeframe (for example, display this video starting on X date with no end time, or display this video only between X date and Y date). Note that when users try to access a video that is no longer valid (in terms of its scheduling), they will receive an error message explaining that this content is no longer valid.

- To configure content scheduling
- 1. Go to Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. Click on an entry.
- 3. Select the Scheduling tab and select and set your specific time range.
- 4. Click Save & Close to complete the process.

Edit Entry - Ince	ption New Featurette	- The Characters	0 8
Metadata Thumbnails Access Control	<ul> <li>Any Time</li> <li>Specific Range</li> <li>Note: Time Zone used is (Gill</li> </ul>	NT+3)	
Scheduling	Start Date:	12:00 am +	
Flavors	End Date:	12:00 am +	
Distribution	Clear Dates		
Captions			
Advertisements			
Related Files			
Clips			
Users			
		Save Save & Close	Previous Entry Next Entry >

# CHAPTER 8

# **Managing Content Entitlement**

Kaltura provides a built-in infrastructure for controlling and managing end-user entitlements to content. This infrastructure includes the required attributes and permission controls as well as the server utilities for enforcing those controls.

Using Kaltura's entitlement services, end-user facing applications such as Kaltura MediaSpace can be extended to add the following capabilities:

- **Groups' media channels** Provides the ability to set media channels that limit access and contribution of content to members of a specific group of users.
- **Granular control over user permissions to content** Provides the ability to define different privacy and permission levels for accessing and managing content in media channels.
- **Personalized global search engine -** Provides the ability for users to easily search and find relevant content from the entire set of media they are entitled to access.

### Kaltura's Entitlement Model

Kaltura's entitlement model relies on the extension of Kaltura's categories. Categories may hold entitlement settings as well as specific end-user permissions. These entitlement settings and end-user permissions are inherited by media entries associated with these types of categories.

The entitlement model provides a direct association between end-users and the collection of media items they are entitled to access, and enables a simple and efficient way to add entitlement controls to both flat and hierarchal application/website navigation layout.

# **Category's Entitlements Tab**

Entitlement settings may be set on categories in different ways, for example, from the application, via the CSV or through a Kaltura API. The Category's Entitlements tab in the KMC is where content entitlement settings are managed by account administrators. The Entitlements tab only appears in KMC accounts that are set with the entitlement feature and in categories that were set to have entitlement settings for an application.



**NOTE:** The Entitlement Settings are added to categories as part of the MediaSpace installation. For other purposes entitlement settings can be added to categories from the Integration Settings page under the Settings tab. See Adding Entitlements to Categories for more information.

The following sections describe the different setting options available in the Entitlements tab and their impact on end-user entitlements in applications such as MediaSpace.



- Workflow to set Entitlement Settings
- 1. Create a category. See Adding/Editing a Specific Category.
- 2. Add Entitlements to categories. See Adding Entitlement to Categories.
- 3. Go to the Content tab and select the Categories tab.
- 4. Click on a category or select Edit from the Actions drop down menu.
- 5. Select the Entitlements tab.
- 6. Set the Entitlement Settings.

### **Setting the Entitlement Settings**

Perform the tasks in the workflow to configure the KMC with Entitlement Settings.



- 1. Set the Content Privacy. See Content Privacy.
- 2. Select the Category Listing.
- **3.** Select the Contribution Policy.
- 4. Select whether to inherit specific end-user permissions.
- 5. Set Specific End User Permissions.
  - a. Change Owner.
  - b. Click Manage to manage end-user permissions.
  - c. Configure Additional Category Entitlement Settings.
- 6. Click Save & Close.

E	lit Category - Sp	ports	98
	Metadata	Here you can manage entitlement settings and specific end-user permissions to content in your application.	8
	Entitlements	Privacy Context Label: MediaSpaceEntitlements	
		② Content Privacy:      No Restriction Content in this category is visible to everyone with access to the application page	
		Requires Authentication Content in this category is visible only to authenticated end-users	
		Private Visible only to users with specific permissions to access this category's content	_
		? Category Listing:      No Restriction Category is visible to everyone with access to the application page	_
		Private Category is visible only to users with specific permission to access this category's content	_
		Who Can Add Content to No Restriction Any authorized end-user this Category?	_
		Private Only end-users with specific permission to add content to this category	
		Inherit Specific End-User     No Set specific end-user permissions for this sub-category     Permissions from Parent	_
		Category? O Yes Specific end-user permissions of parent category will automatically apply to this sub-category	- 11
		Specific End-User Permissions:	
		Owner: Not Specified Change   Users: 0 end-users have permissions to this category Manage	×
		Save Save & Close	t Category >

### **Content Privacy**

The content privacy defines the visibility of content associated with a category, including its related metadata. The Content Privacy setting is applied to:

- Who has access to content published in channel pages
- Which content will be available to the user in the application global search results
- Who can access to a single media item in the application.

The Content Privacy options are:

- No Restriction Content in the category is visible to everyone with access to the application page it is published in. In MediaSpace this option is mostly relevant for setting Media Galleries that are open on the web and can be accessible by everyone, including anonymous viewers.
- Requires Authentication Content in the category is visible only to authenticated end-users In MediaSpace this option is mostly relevant for setting Media Galleries or Open/Restricted Media Channels that are available to all authenticated users (users of the company/Institution, customers with login etc.) User authentication is made by MediaSpace against the customer Identity Management system, or with using Kaltura's authentication services. In both cases, the authenticated user ID is then passed to the Kaltura server through the application session.
- Private Content in this category is visible only to users with specific permission to access this category's content and to the owner of the content. In MediaSpace this option is mostly relevant for setting Private Media Channels available only to a group of users.
- Note: With any content privacy option the owner of the content is entitled to access and manage his content

### Visibility of Content Associated with Multiple Categories

For content associated with more than one category, the privacy and visibility of this content via global search or a direct link to the video page, is determined based on the category with the lowest restriction level the content is associated with (within the application category tree).

### **Examples**

#### In a MediaSpace based media portal:

- A video that is published in a few private channels but also in at least one public gallery (Content Privacy = No Restriction) will be visible to everyone with access to the portal. Access to this video in this case is available to all from the public gallery page itself, via the portal's Global Search or via a direct link to the MediaSpace page of this video.
- A video that is published in a few private channels but also in <u>at least one</u> organizational shared gallery (Content Privacy = Requires Authentication), will be visible to all members of the organization (following login to the portal) from the organizational shared gallery page itself, but also via the portal's Global Search or via a direct link to the MediaSpace page of this video. This content will not be available to anonymous viewers with a direct link to the MediaSpace page of this video a login page will be prompted in this case.
- A video that is published in a few private channels but is also set in Kaltura categories managed in the KMC account that are not integrated with the media portal (for example, categories integrated with Kaltura extensions to CMS/LMS, categories set by the account KMC administrator for different purposes, etc.). Access to the video via the Media Portal is determined only by the entitlements settings of the categories the Media Portal is integrated with. This is controlled by the application specific "privacy content" label set to these categories.
- A video that uploaded by an end-user but was not published in any gallery or channel in MediaSpace (private media), could only be accessed by the content owner.

# Visibility of Content in Outside of the Application

When the entitlement feature is enabled for the account, an internal enforcement level is also set and managed by Kaltura.

The options for entitlement enforcement are:

• Entitlement enforcement is enabled by default.

When entitlement enforcement is enabled for the account - access to content under categories with entitlement is only possible via applications that implement entitlement and are integrated with these categories. This is the recommended setting in MediaSpace accounts for the highest level of content security.

**Note**: that embed codes that are grabbed by authorized users from within the MediaSpace application are bypassing the entitlement enforcement for the specific entry. Thus the entry will become publically available within the grabbed player outside of MediaSpace.

#### • Entitlement enforcement is disabled by default and enabled by the application.

When entitlement enforcement is disabled for account - access to content under categories with entitlement is possible via any application, including player embed codes that are grabbed from the KMC. With this option the application itself activate the entitlement enforcement so entitlement rules are kept within the application but all content in categories the application is integrated with can be accessed via other applications as well. This is the default setting for

Kaltura trial accounts.

Contact Kaltura to change the entitlement enforcement level for your account.

# **Category Listing**

The Category Listing option defines who can see the category's name and metadata in MediaSpace. The Category Listing options are:

- **No Restriction** With this option, the category name and metadata is visible to everyone with access to the application page it is listed in. **In MediaSpace** this option is used for having MediaSpace Galleries always listed in the top menus and side navigation layout and for having MediaSpace open or restricted channels included in the Channels listing page.
- **Private** With this option, the category name and metadata are visible only to users with permission to access the category and its content. In MediaSpace this option is used for having private channels visible only to group members.

# **Contribution Policy**

The contribution policy option defines which end-users can add content to this category through applications. The applicative permission to publish in MediaSpace's shared Galleries is set from the MediaSpace Application Role of the user. See the Kaltura MediaSpace Setup Guide for more information. The category contribution policy adds the ability to have this type of authorization for publishing content in specific galleries/channels.

The Category Contribution Policy options are:

- No Restriction With this option, any end-user authorized to publish content in MediaSpace can publish content in the gallery/channel associated with this category. In MediaSpace this option is used in shared galleries to which every user with a MediaSpace Admin Application Role can add content to, and in Open Channels to which all MediaSpace users with content can add their content to.
- **Private** With this option, only end-users with specific permission to add content to this category are able to add content to it. In MediaSpace this option is used in Restricted/Private Channels.

### **Specific End-User Permissions**

When any one of the Category Entitlement Options is set to Private, the respective access level is based on specific end-user permissions. User permissions to a category and content associated with it are set through 4 permission levels: Member, Contributor, Moderator, and Manager. The basic access permissions listed below are enforced by the Kaltura server. In MediaSpace the permission levels are used to control the availability of the relevant UI controls and user flows, for example, Channel Settings, Channel's moderation panel, Publish Module and others.

Permissions Permission Levels	View Content and Category	Add Remove Content to Category	Approve Content added to the category	Edit Category's settings, privacy options and user permissions	Remove Category
Member	Х				
Contributor	Х	Х			
Moderator	Х	Х	Х		
Manager	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х

The settings of end-user permissions can be made from the KMC, in Bulk Process via a CSV formatted schema, or via Kaltura APIs.

**In MediaSpace:** Channel Managers are able to set their channel's groups members and may assign different permission levels to members of their group.

**Note:** the content owner has always full access and editing permissions to his own content. He is also able to remove his content from any category, regardless of the category's settings.

**Tip:** the category end-user permissions may also be used by applications when the category is not set as private – for granting category specific applicative permissions to specific users. **In MediaSpace:** users that is not set to with an Admin Application Role can still be granted with permission to publish content in specific galleries. In this case the category's contribution policy is set to **No Restriction** while ability to publish content in the respective gallery is granted by the application to all MediaSpace **Admin** users, but also to a few specific users that are set as contributors in the category.

#### **End-User Permission Attributes**

- **Status** indication to the state of the user permission set to the category. This attribute may be used for supporting different applicative flows.
  - o Active Access permission is active and enforced
  - **Deactivated** Access permission is not active anymore. (can be activated again)
- **Update Method** indication on how a specific end-user permission is updated, this may be used for supporting automatic processes for setting permissions to channels from groups managed in on organizational information systems, while being able to set manual overrides to specific end-user permissions.
  - Automatic user permission is updated via an automatic process (either via a CSV formatted schema or an API based integration). User permission level may be updated by the automatic process.
  - Manual user permission is updated manually only and will not be updated by an automatic process.

### Managing Categories' Specific End-User Permissions

To manage categories specific end-user permissions

#### **1.** Set the Entitlement Settings.

The Specific End-User Permissions window is displayed.

2. Click Add Users.

Search End-Users Q									
Additional Filters	User ID	Permission Le	Status	Update M	Updated (	Actions			
<b>-</b>	jonhs123	Contributor	Active	Manual	07/10/2012	Select Action	•	Add Users	
All Permission Levels	miked456	Contributor	Active	Manual	07/10/2012	Select Action	•		
Contributor	danau172	Contributor	Active	Manual	07/10/2012	Select Action	•		
Moderator								Category	
Manager									
All Statuses									
Active	Deactivate								
Deactivated	Activate Set Permission	ns Level							
All Update Methods		Update Method tic Update Method	1						
Manual	Delete								
Automatic	Bulk Actions	-		1 1-3 of 3		Show rows: 50	-		

- 3. Select the Permission Level. See Specific End-Users Permissions.
- 4. Select the Update Method. See End User Permission Attributes.
- 5. Select End Users. Enter user names.
- 6. Click Save & Close.

earch End-Users Q					
Iditional Filters	Sports - Add Use		an In an ada a	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
All Permission Levels	Here you can set end-us	ser permissions	s for this category		Add Users
Member	Permission Level:	Contributor		•	Add Users
Contributor	Update Method:	Manual		-	Category
Moderator	Select End-Users:	johns123	× miked456 × danau17	2 ×	
All Statuses					
Active		Sav	Save & Close		
Deactivated					
🖌 All Update Methods					
Manual					
Automatic	Bulk Actions		1 1-3 of 3	Show rows: 50	

# Bulk Actions for Managing Categories Specific End-User Permissions

To perform bulk actions on specific end-user permissions

- 1. Check the box or multiple boxes next to the user name and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 2. Select one of the following options
  - o Deactivate deactivates the specific end user permissions for the category
  - o Activate activates the specific end user permissions for the category
  - o Set permission levels- overrides the permission level of all selected end-users
  - Set to manual update method. See End-User Permission Attributes.
  - Set to automatic update method. See End-User Permission Attributes.
  - o Delete- deletes specific end-user permission for the category.
- 3. Click Close.

### **Additional Category Entitlement Settings**

The following additional settings are available at the lower part of the Entitlements tab:

Edit Category - Sport	s		<b>?</b> 8
Metadata		Requires Authentication Content in this category is visible only to authenticated end-users	A
Entitlements		Private Visible only to users with specific permissions to access this category's content	
(	? Category Listing:	No Restriction Category is visible to everyone with access to the application page	
		Private Category is visible only to users with specific permission to access this category's content	
	? Who Can Add Content to this Category?	No Restriction Any authorized end-user	
-		Private Only end-users with specific permission to add content to this category	
(	Inherit Specific End-User Permissions from Parent	No Set specific end-user permissions for this sub-category	
	Category?	Yes Specific end-user permissions of parent category will automatically apply to this sub-category	
	Specific End-User Permission	is:	
	Owner: johns123 Change	Users: 3 end-users have permissions to this category Manage	
	Default permission level:	Member	
	Moderate Content?	No	
		⊖ Yes	×
		Save Save & Close	:gory >

- Category Owner a category attribute, for setting one of the channel managers as the channel owner for any applicative need. The category owner is automatically set with a manager permission level for the category. See Change Owner.
- Default Permission Level a category attribute for setting a specific default permission level to the category, for supporting different applicative flows.
- Moderate Content a category attribute, for supporting the moderation of content prior it's

publishing in the channel. (Moderation is configured through MediaSpace.)

# CHAPTER 9

# **Managing Categories**

Media entries may be divided into categories. The different categories are built in a tree-like hierarchy where each category can include multiple sub-categories.

Categories provide a logical structure for your site and assist with content management. You can use categories, along with metadata and filters to create manually or dynamically generated playlists. Categories may also be used for setting content entitlements to end-users in various applications. See Entitlement Settings.

# **Defining and Assigning Entry Categories**

Categories are built in a tree-like hierarchy where each category can include multiple sub-categories. You can add, remove and edit categories from the Categories Tab. You can assign a media entry to a specific category from the Entries Tab.

#### To assign an entry to a specific category

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. Click on the Entry.
- 3. Enter the Category in the Metadata tab.
- 4. Click Save and Close.

#### To remove an entry from a category

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. Click on the Entry.
- 3. Remove the category settings in the Metadata tab.
- 4. Click Save.



**NOTE:** When you click Delete in the Entries table, the entry will be deleted from the account and not only from the category that is currently selected. See Delete Entry.

# **Categories Table**

The Categories Table lists the categories in your account and provides a way to edit the category's specific metadata and entitlement settings. You can edit each a specific category from the Edit Category window or apply actions on several categories simultaneously from the Bulk Actions Menu.

# Adding/Editing a Specific Category

#### To add a category

1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.

2. Select Add Category.

The New Category window is displayed.

Metadata		
	Select the parent category under which the new category will appear	
	O No Parent	
	KMS Root	
	▶ ○ Adventure	
	O Foreign	
	O Drama	
	O Thriller	
	Comedy	
	O Fantasy	

3. Select No Parent if you want the category to be at the top level or select the parent category under which the new category should be created and select Next. We recommend that you minimize categories at the top level. The New Category window is displayed.

New Category	2 8
	96
Metadata	
Name:	
Description:	
Tags: Enter tags	
Reference ID:	
Save & Close	

4. Add metadata and click Save & Close.

# Adding Metadata to a Category

You can add or edit metadata to a category or to multiple categories.

### To add/edit metadata to a category

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Click on a category. Edit Category window is displayed.
- 3. In the Metadata tab, add or edit the metadata information. Enter a
  - a. Name
  - b. Description (Optional).
  - c. Tags.(Optional)
  - d. Reference ID (Optional).
| E | lit Category - Sp | orts          |                               |                   | <b>8</b> 8      |
|---|-------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   | Metadata          | Coto non ID.  | 400054                        |                   |                 |
|   | Entitlements      | Category ID:  | 162251                        |                   |                 |
|   |                   | Name:         | Sports                        |                   |                 |
|   |                   | Description:  |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   | Tags:         | Swimming × Fishing × Sports × |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   | Reference ID: |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   | txt:          |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               |                               |                   |                 |
|   |                   |               | Save Save & Close             | Previous Category | Next Category > |

- 4. If you have Custom Data for categories, you can edit the Custom Data fields for the category. For multiple schemas, use the drop down Jump To menu to select the schema values you want to edit for the category. See Managing Schemas for more information.
- 5. Click Save & Close.

## **Editing the Entitlement Settings of a Category**

When a category is set to have entitlement settings for an application, the category's Entitlements tab is displayed for editing. See Managing Content Entitlement for more information.



**NOTE:** Entitlement Settings are added to categories as part of the MediaSpace installation. For other purposes, Entitlement Settings can be added to categories from the Integration Settings page under the Settings tab.

#### To edit Entitlement Settings of a category

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Click on a category. The Edit Category window is displayed.
- 3. In the Entitlements tab, edit the Entitlement Settings options, set a category owner and any specific end-user permissions you want to set to the category for your application. Informative tooltips are available for each one of the options. See Managing Content Entitlement for more information.
- 4. Click Save & Close.

Metadata	Here you can manage entitlement settings and specific end-user permissions to content in your application.	
Entitlements	Privacy Context Label: MediaSpaceEntitlements	
	Content Privacy:      No Restriction Content in this category is visible to everyone with access to the application page	
	Requires Authentication Content in this category is visible only to authenticated end-users	
	Private Visible only to users with specific permissions to access this category's content	
	Category Listing:     No Restriction Category is visible to everyone with access to the application page	
	Private Category is visible only to users with specific permission to access this category's content	
	Who Can Add Content to     No Restriction Any authorized end-user	
	this Category? O Private Only end-users with specific permission to add content to this category	
	Inherit Specific End-User     No Set specific end-user permissions for this sub-category	
	Permissions from Parent Category? O Yes Specific end-user permissions of parent category will automatically apply to this sub-category	
	Specific End-User Permissions:	
	Owner: Not Specified Change   Users: 0 end-users have permissions to this category Manage	

## **Reordering Sub Categories**

When a category has up to 50 sub-categories the Sub-Categories tab is available for editing. Use the Sub Categories tab to order the sub categories. Sub Categories will appear in the application as they are ordered.

Use the Sub- Categories tab to order MediaSpace Galleries. For other applications: the ordering set through the Sub- Categories tab can be used through the Kaltura API while ordering category lists based on the partnerSortValue category attribute.

#### To reorder sub categories

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Click on a category. The Edit Category window is displayed.
- 3. Select the Sub-Categories Tab,
- 4. Set the order of the sub-categories. Position the sub categories as you want them to be ordered in your application.
- 5. Click Save & Close.

#### Managing Categories

Edit Category - gal	leries		0 0
Metadata			
Metadata	Reorder this category's sub-cat	egories	
Entitlements	Sub-Category		Position
Sub Categories	Events		<b>~</b>
	News		· ·
	Sports		<b>^ v</b>
	Education		▲ ▼
	Cool Videos		<u> </u>
		Save Save & Close	Previous Category Next Category >

## **Editing Multiple Categories in Bulk**

You can edit multiple categories in bulk.

### To edit multiple categories in bulk

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Check the boxes near the names of the categories you want to edit.
- 3. Select Bulk Actions at bottom of the list.

							😱 Refre
ategories	Sea	rch Categories	٩				
er by Categories		ID	Name	Sub-Categories	Entries	Actions	
All Categories (No Filter)		150151	sub	0	2	Select Action 🔻	Add Category
KMS Root		142121	Fantasy	0	1	Select Action 🔻	
Adventure Foreign		142071	Comedy	0	2	Select Action 🔻	
Drama		142041	Thriller	0	1	Select Action 🔹	
Comedy		142021	Drama	0	2	Select Action 🔻	
Fantasy		141991	Adventure	1	1	Select Action 🔹	
		142001	Foreign	0	1	Select Action 🔹	
		141531	KMS Root	0	0	Select Action 🔻	
		Edit Tags Move Categorie Change Conten Change Catego Change Contrib	t Privacy y Listing				

Use the Categories tab to:

- Add Tags
- Remove Tags
- Move Categories
- Change Content Privacy (available with entitlement configuration only
- Change Category Listing (available with entitlement configuration only)
- Change Contribution Policy(available with entitlement configuration only)
- Change Category Owner (available with entitlement configuration only)
- Delete Categories

### Add Tags to Categories

You can add tags to categories in the KMC that will propagate to other applications.

#### To add tags to a category listing

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Select a category or multiple categories and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Add Tags from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Enter tags to append to all selected categories.
- 5. Click Save Changes.

Add Tags 🛛 😨 😣
Enter tags to be appended to all selected categories. Use a comma to add multiple tags.
Save Changes

## **Remove Tags from Categories**

You can remove tags from categories in the KMC. Tag deletion will propagate to other applications.

#### To remove tags from a category listing

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Select a category or multiple categories and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Remove Tags from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select the tags to remove from the selected categories.
- 5. Click Remove.

Remove Tags	98
Select the tags you wish to remove from the selecte (use the ctrl key for multiple selection)	d categories
boys	
terrible twos	
todlers	
Remove	

### **Move Categories**

You can move categories from one level to another.

#### To move a category to another parent category

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Select a category or multiple categories that area currently under the same parent category and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Move Categories from the Bulk Actions options.
- 4. Select the new parent category under which the selected categories will appear.
- 5. Click Apply.

Move	Category ?
Select th	e parent category under which the selected category will appear.
	KMS Root
▶0	Adventure
۲	Foreign
$\bigcirc$	Drama
$\bigcirc$	Thriller
$\bigcirc$	Comedy
$\bigcirc$	Fantasy
	Apply

Following a Move Categories action, the category tree is updated on the Kaltura backend. When more than a few categories are affected, this operation may take a few minutes. Until the completion of this process, the editing options in the Categories page are disabled and are automatically released when the update process is completed.

## **Change Content Privacy**

Content privacy is a category entitlement setting option that defines the visibility of content associated with a category. For more information see Content Privacy.

This option is available with entitlement configuration only.

#### To change the content privacy

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Select a category or multiple categories.

Select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page and then select Change Content Privacy from the drop-down menu. The content privacy options are:

- No Restriction Content in this category is visible to everyone with access to the application
  page it is published in.
- **Requires Authentication** Content in this category is visible only to authenticated end-users. User authentication is made by the application against the customer Identity Management system, or using Kaltura's authentication services. In both cases access to content in this category requires that an authenticated user ID is passed to the Kaltura server through the application session.
- Private Content in this category is visible only to users with specific permission to access this category's content.
- 3. Click Apply.

Change Content Privacy Settings 28
Change the Content Privacy settings for all selected categories
O No Restriction
<ul> <li>Requires authentication</li> </ul>
O Private
Apply

Note that the Changing the Content Privacy will only apply to categories that have entitlement settings.

## **Change Contribution Policy**

The contribution policy is a category entitlement setting option that defines which end-users can add content to a category through applications. For more information see Change Contribution Policy. This option is available with entitlement configuration only.

- **To change the contribution policy**
- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Select a category or multiple categories and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Change Contribution Policy from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select one of the following options:
- **No Restriction** With this option, any end-user authorized by the application can add content to this category
- **Private** With this option, only end-users with specific permission to add content to this category are able to add content to it.
- 5. Click Apply.

Change Category Contribution Policy Settings	28
Change the Category Contribution Policy settings for all selected categories	
O No Restriction	
O Private	
Apply	

Note that the Change Category Contribution Policy action will only apply on categories that have entitlement settings.

## **Change Category Listing**

The category listing is a category entitlement setting option that defines who can see the category's name and metadata in the application's category menus, navigations and listing or anywhere a category list is present. See Category Listing for more information.

This option is available with entitlement configuration only.

	o cł	nange	а	category	y	listi	in	g
--	------	-------	---	----------	---	-------	----	---

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Click on a category. The Edit Category window is displayed.
- 3. Select a category or multiple categories and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 4. Select Change Category Listing from the drop-down menu.
- 5. Select one of the following options:
- **No Restriction** The category name and metadata is visible to everyone with access to the application page it is listed in.
- **Private** The category name and metadata are visible only to users with permission to access the category and its content.
- 6. Click Apply.

Change Category Listing Settings	98
Change the Category Listing settings for all selected categor	ries
No Restriction	
O Private	
Apply	

Note that the Change Category Listing action will only apply on categories that have entitlement settings.

## **Change Category Owner**

The Category Owner is a category entitlement option supporting applicative case in which an end-user should be set as the owner of the category. This will automatically set the user with a manager permission level for this category and enable him to manage the category settings from the application.

This option is available with entitlement configuration only

#### To change the ownership on a category listing

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Select a category or multiple categories and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Change Category Owner from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Enter the new owner's User Name or User ID.

Change Owner	<b>?</b> 8
Set a new owner for this category	
johns123 ×	
johns123 Save	
	-
Change Owner	<b>9</b> 8
Change Owner Set a new owner for this category	08
	00

When the selected user is already listed in Kaltura, the user's ID or name appears in blue. When the selected user is not listed in Kaltura the typed text appears in red shape and after Saving, the user is added to Kaltura as the user ID.

5. Click Save.

## **Delete Categories**

You can delete categories in the KMC. Category deletion is propagated to other applications.

When categories are deleted from the KMC, the entries in these categories are automatically added to the parent of the deleted category.

To delete categories		То	delete	cated	ories
----------------------	--	----	--------	-------	-------

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Categories tab.
- 2. Select a category or multiple categories and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Delete from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select the categories to remove.

A warning message is displayed.

5. Click Remove.

## **Updating Categories' State**

Some of the category related actions taken in the KMC may trigger a category update process on the Kaltura backend. This is mainly to allow continuous work through the KMC interface even when actions affect large portions of the category tree or apply on a very high number of categories.

While the Kaltura backend process is running, an 'Updating Categories' indication is set on the top right

corner of the categories filter bar.

Categories	Search Categories
Filter by Categories	D ID
All Categories (No Filter)	Updating Categories
hd content	161881
▶ video ▶ image	161891

The 'Updating Categories' state may last a few minutes and until its completion. Some category settings and tree displays in the KMC may not be fully updated.

After the updating process is completed the 'Updating Categories' indication automatically disappears.

## CHAPTER 10

# **KMC Users and Roles**

This section contains the following topic:

- Roles and Permissions
- Content Moderation Workflows
- The Moderation tab

# **Roles and Permissions**

Roles and permissions enable organizations to define a user's ability to perform actions based on the user's responsibilities. Only users with admin permissions can add users, create roles and define permissions.

A publisher uses the roles and permissions infrastructure to specify actions that a user is allowed to perform. User roles define permissions granted to the user for the different KMC functionalities.

## Adding a User

The following table lists the information that should be provided for adding a new KMC admin user. Please note that a limited number of users are allocated by default to each KMC account. If you reached the KMC users quota for your account and need to set additional users, please contact Kaltura with a request for additional KMC admin users.

Field	Description
Email address	The user's email address serves as a unique identifier of the user in the Kaltura system, as the user login username and as a recipient address for system-generated messages. Upon the creation of a new user account, a welcome email notification will be sent to this email address with a link for setting the initial password.
First name, Last name	User's name
Publisher ID (Optional)	A unique identifier that may be in use by the publisher in different systems. This will serve as the KMC user identifier as content contributor in all KMC-related locations. When a publisher ID is not provided, the user email address will be used as a default value.
User Role	Defines the set of permissions granted to the user for the different KMC functionalities. This role should be set according to the tasks that the user needs to work on and the functionalities that the user needs access to within the KMC. The different KMC user roles are set (by users who are granted with permission to do so) from the KMC Roles page (under the Administration tab).

#### **To add a user**

- 1. Go to the Administration tab and select the Users tab.
- 2. Click Add User, and fill in the details in the Add User window.
- 3. Select a User Role from the drop-down menu.

<b>₿Ka</b>	Itura Dash	board Conten	Studio Analytics Settings Administration Upload Y	< Debbie Zioni
User	Roles			?
Author	ized KMC Users	Add User	0 0	
-	can manage the KMC users with atus: 6 KMC users in use. 9 addit	Personal Details		
Status	User Name	Login Email Address*:	your_email.com Actions	Add User
Active	Zohar Babin (Account Owner)	First Name*:	Firstname Select Action	- <b>-</b>
Active	ldo Setter	Last Name*:	Lastname Select Action	~
Active	Debbie Zioni (You)			•
Active	Yisrael Woolf	Account Specific	Details Select Action	-
Active	Roni Cohen	Publisher User ID: (Optional)	Select Action	•
Active	Vitaly Shter	User Role:	Publisher Administrator 🗸 + Add Role Select Action	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
		Description:	Publisher Administrator Manager Content Moleardor Player Designer Save	

- 4. (Optional) Click Add Role to create a custom role. See Creating Custom Roles.
- 5. Click Save.

When a user is created, an email will be sent to the specified email address containing a link to set the account password.

## Editing a User

After a user account is set in the system, the user's personal details can only be set by the user personally, from the **My User Settings** page in the **Settings** tab. See **My User Settings**.

#### **To edit user information**

- 1. Go to the Administration tab and select the Users tab.
- 2. Click on a User and then select Edit from the drop down tab.

Only the Publisher User ID and the User Role may be edited in Edit User window. Please note that it is not possible to edit the user role that is defined as the Account Owner. In addition, a KMC user with access to user management functionalities cannot edit the user role selection in their account.

## **Deleting and Blocking Users**

You can prevent users from logging into the KMC temporarily or permanently. Blocking a user will prevent the user from logging into the KMC. This restriction can be removed by applying the unblock action.

Deleting a user is a permanent action. The deleted user's content contribution records will be kept in the system.

#### To block or unblock a user

1. Select the Administration tab and select the Users tab.

- 2. Click on a User Name.
- 3. Select Block/Unblock from the Select Action drop-down menu to block a user temporarily.
- 4. Select Delete from the Select Action drop-down menu to remove a user permanently.

	User Name	User ID	Email Address	Role	Last Login	Actions
Active	ariel (You, Account Owner)	ADMIN7133	ariel hitron@kaitura.com	Publisher Administrator	03/15/11 11:21	Select Action
Active	ariel hitron	ariehh@gmail.com	ariethit@gmail.com	Player Designer	03/14/11 5.14	Select Action
Active	John Smith	ismith@company.com	ismith@company.com	Content Uploader	12/13/01 12:45	Select Action

## **Purchasing a License for Additional Users**

Each KMC account is allocated three users.

#### To request additional users

1. Select the Administration tab and then select the Users tab

The Current Status lists the number of KMC users and the number of available users.

2. Click on the Click here to upgrade your account link.

🔆 Ka	itura Di	ashboard	Content	Studio	Analytics	Settings	Administration	
Users	Roles							
Author	ized KMC Users							
	an manage the KMC users w					• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	xisting users and more.	
Current sta	tus: 3 KMC users in use. 0 a User Name	dditional availabl			mail Address	account.	ما	
Active	ariel (You, Account Owner	)A	DMIN7133	ar	iel.hitron@kaltura.co	om Pul	olisher Administrator	
Active	ariel hitron	oriol	hit@qmail.com		ielhit@gmail.com	Die	ver Designer	

jsmith@company.com

## **Creating Custom Roles**

John Smith

Active

When you add a KMC admin user role to a specific publisher account, you should add the relevant set of permissions in the **Add Role** window. You can select which KMC functionalities are available to users with the defined role. Clicking the checkmark next to each permission group name will toggle the permission level for the specific KMC functionality to the following modes:

• Full Permission (checked) – Grants access to all KMC functionalities listed under the permission group.

jsmith@company.com

- View-Only Permission (partially checked) –Only part of the functionality listed in the group is selected.
- **No Permission** (unchecked) No access to the KMC pages that are relevant to the KMC functionalities listed under the permission group.

Content Uploader

### To create custom roles

- 1. Go to the Administration tab and select the Roles tab.
- 2. Click Add Role to create a custom role.

ole Name*: C	ompany Marketing User						
escription': p	ermissions needed by marketi	ing team	-	Save Date	Actions	-0	Add
		34 <b>1</b> -03(280)		03/06/11 22:30	Select Action		~
<u>ntact us</u> to learn n	nore about adding any disable	d items below to your account.		03/06/11 22:32	Select Action	•	
Set Role's Perm		Collapse All Expand	All	03/06/11 22:32	Select Action	•	
🖌 Upload File/s	3		-	03/06/11 22:32	Select Action	-	
👿 Bulk Upload				03/06/11 22:32	Select Action	•	
Content Mar Content Mod		advanced					
🖌 Playlist Mana	agement	advanced					
Syndication	Management	advanced					
📄 Content Dist	tribution	advanced					
Studio		advanced	-				

3. Enter the Role Name and provide a description.

After naming the role and providing a description you will be able to select the specific permissions required.

- 4. Most of the permissions are organized under KMC high-level functionalities. For granular permissions within each category click Expand All. Or click Advanced to open a more detailed list of the specific KMC functionalities related to the group.
- 5. Click Save.

You can edit, duplicate or delete any existing role via the using the Select action drop-down menu.

## **Role Management**

After you create roles you can:

- Edit a role
- Duplicate a role.
- Delete a role.

#### To modify roles

- 1. Go to the Administration tab and select the Roles tab.
- 2. Click on a role.
- **3.** Select an option from the Actions menu.
- Edit a role

Editing a user role affects the access level of the KMC user associated with this role only after the user logs in to the KMC. We recommend that you edit an "in-use" role when users associated

with this role are not logged into the KMC.

#### • Duplicate a role

Duplicating a role is a quick way to create a new KMC user role with a similar, but not identical, set of permissions as an existing user role. The duplicated role is populated with the permission set of the duplication source role, so minor changes to this permission set can be easily made. After you duplicate a role, use the Edit option to modify the permissions.

#### • Delete Role

Deleting a role is a permanent action. It is not possible to delete a user role record as long as KMC admin users are associated with the role. In such cases, make sure to update the relevant KMC user accounts with another user role before attempting to delete their existing role.

# CHAPTER 11

# **Moderation and Editorial Workflows**

This section contains the following topics:

- Content Moderation Workflows
- The Moderation Tab

# **Content Moderation Workflows**

You can review content before it is published to eliminate spam and abusive content in User Generated Content (UGC) portals. You can also implement complex editorial workflows for your various editorial team roles.

# **The Moderation Tab**

The Moderation tab located in the Content tab in the KMC, allows publishers to see the moderation queue, where all entries marked as pending, are waiting to be approved or rejected. Content moderators can change the moderation status (approve/reject).

This window displays a list of all content that has been flagged as inappropriate by users. By default, the list is filtered and sorted according to the amount of flags that each entry has received. You can sort the list by clicking on the various columns and scroll through the pages at the bottom of the list.

🔆 Kaltura	Dashboard	Cor	ntent	Studio	Analytics	Settings	Administ	ration	Upload 😽			< Atar Shadmi
Entries Moderation	Playlists	Syndication	Categorie	s							Upload Control	Drop Folders 🤶
Moderation		Search Entr	ies	Q	Pending moder	ation × F	lagged for review	w ×				C Refresh
Categories	*		Thumbnail	ID	Name	Туре	Player Loads	Plays	Created On 🔒	Flags		
► □ All	*			0_kfqx9aja	tnuva 2	Ħ	0	0	11/23/11 10:43	1		
			Kaltura exclusion	0_wt9lj4gu	aBlack Source	H	o	0	05/03/12 11:43	2		
				0_ldm58bo6	<u>trailer1_eng.mov (S</u>	Ħ	0	0	05/06/12 17:59	2		
				0_i041na5n	<u>3568585 trailer1 e</u>	Ħ	0	0	05/06/12 19:57	1		
											00:00 View full det	oo:oo ails Ban User 🔒
Search Categories												
Additional Filters												
new entries scheme												
it's complicated												
test		Bulk Act	1000					1 1-4 of 4	1			
Custom data profile check		Bulk Act	ions				1	1 1-4 01 4			Sho	w rows: 10 🗸

#### To display content for moderation

1. Select the Content tab and then select the Moderation tab.

2. Click on the name of an entry.

The Edit Entry window is displayed. Similar to the Entries tab, the Filters bar to the left of the entries table is displayed.

**3.** Filter your moderation entry list according to various parameters and search criteria. See Filtering Content in the Entries Table.

By default, the list is already filtered by content that was flagged for review. To change this, click on the "Additional Filters" button (see Use Additional Filters).

## **Previewing Content using the Moderation Tab**

#### **To preview content**

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Moderation tab.
- Click on the name of an entry. The entry is displayed in the small player to the right of the list.
- **3.** Click on the bottom right of the preview pane, "View full details" link for quickly reviewing or editing the content of an entry.

## **Rejecting Content using the Moderation Tab**

#### To reject content (one or more entries)

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Moderation tab.
- Select the relevant entries (for multiple choices, use either the CTRL key or the selection dropdown menu at the bottom of the page) and press the "Reject Selected" button.
   You can reject more than one entry at a time, but only for entries appearing on the same page of the main list.

## Approving Content using the Moderation tab

- To approve content (one or more entries)
- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Moderation tab.
- Select the relevant entries (for multiple choices, use the CTRL key or use the selection dropdown menu at the bottom of the page) and press the "Approve Selected" button.
   You can approve more than one entry at a time, but only for entries appearing on the same page of the main list.

### **Banning Users using the Moderation tab**

#### To ban users

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Moderation tab.
- 2. Click on the "Ban User" link under the preview player. This triggers a notification to be sent to your website's CMS with a request to ban the specific user that created the selected entry.

#### Moderation and Editorial Workflows

										C Refer
<b>Noderation</b>	Search	h Entries	4							
ilter by Categories		Thumbnail	10	Rame	Туре	Plays	Created On ,	Flags	Moderation Status	
All Categories (No Filter)		Sbra	0_r7nd5dkp	Sample Katura Logo		٥	05/30/12 17:18	0	Approved	1
video  tid content  video		Kaltura	0_iz2ovz7i	Sansie Xatura Animotel Los	н	0	65/30/12 17:18	٥	Auto Approved	
test     test		1.	0_9zew371b	Sample Big Buck Burny Train	H	0	05/30/12 17:18	0	Auto Approved	
		Maria	0_jastQyn8	Normal with quality video 745	н	0	85/30/12 17:18	0	Auto Approved	05.05 05.05
		-	100156_0	Excellent web quality index (	Ħ	0	05/30/12 17:18	0	Auto Approved	Verw fut details Ben User
	1		0_etitb0z9v	com. stat	н	0	06/04/12 15:56	8	Auto Approved	
	0	(P)	0_7s2y0stw	debbe. Bre		0	06204/12 10:14	0	Auto Approved	_
			0_eq28znx7	apen altai	H	0	66/06/12 19:17 0 Auto Approved	Auto Approved		
		THE LAW	0_50gkfahb	open_shut	H					
	0		0_2m0a468	spen shat	H	0	06/05/12 18:21	0	Auto Approved	
rch Calepones	-	210	o_poster	A LOBO	ы	0	491012 12.32		Para Opposition	
iditional Filters		Reject Selected		Mases HEW	H	0	06/12/12 17:11	0	Auto Approved	

# CHAPTER 12

# **Using Subtitles and Captions**

This section contains the following topics:

- Caption File Types
- Subtitles and Captions Terminology
- Adding Captions to an Entry
- Setting Up Captions for Display

# **Caption File Types**

You can upload multiple subtitle and caption files (SRT, DXFP, and XML) and transcripts (TXT), or reference an external link to a captions file in the KMC. Viewers can then select and toggle between different language subtitles and captions. Subtitles and captions are fully searchable as a metadata field. Kaltura's accessibility player plugin also makes the captions readable via screen readers and therefore helps organizations adhere to 508 compliancy regulations. Kaltura's "In Video Search" API allows users to for a specific phrase within a library of videos and within the search results directs the user to the exact point in the video where the phrase appears. For more information see Kaltura Demo Apps for Captions.

You can also automate the creation of subtitles and captions, and transcriptions through our partners in Kaltura Exchange. For instance check out 3Play Media Interactive Transcript / Captioning Plugin.

## **Searching within Captions**

Publishers can use the Kaltura API and code skeleton to search within the captions and point the viewer directly to the relevant point in time. The search is done across a catalogue of videos, making the discovery process easy and accessible, especially when searching in a large amount of content.

Contact your account manager to learn more on how to integrate this functionality into your website and environment.

# **Subtitles and Captions Terminology**

A caption file contains both the text and information about when each line of text should be displayed.

A caption is synonymous with **subtitle** and is usually displayed at the bottom of the screen.

SRT and DXFP are text file formats that contain captions; **including the time** each subtitle should be displayed followed by the text of the subtitle.

If the caption includes non-dialog text, the file is considered a **closed caption**.

**Transcriptions** are files that contain text of the video without time stamps.

Captions can either be a form of written translation of a dialog in a foreign language or a written rendering of the dialog in the same language. Closed captions files contain added information to help viewers who are deaf and hard-of-hearing to follow the dialog, or people who cannot understand the spoken dialogue or who have accent recognition problems.

For greater accessibility and compatibility with equipment like screen readers, use Kaltura's 508 Compliant Player. For more information, see 508-Compliant Video Player.

# **Adding Captions to an Entry**

	0_
-	Y
-	V

- Adding Captions to an Entry Workflow:
- 1. In the Upload tab, upload an entry.
- 2. Create a player and add content to the player.
- 3. Configure the player's Subtitles and Transcriptions options.
- 4. Select an entry and add captions to the entry.
- 5. View the entry with the captions.

You can add multiple captions files to each entry. For example, you can create subtitles captions in multiple languages and label each language.

#### To assign a caption file to an entry

- 1. Select the Content tab and click on an entry.
- 2. Select the Captions tab.
- 3. Click Add Another Caption.
- 4. Select the Type. Choose SRT or DXFP.
- 5. Paste an external URL in the File Location or click Upload File and upload an SRT or DFXP file from your computer.

humbnails	l o assign a file, eithei	r paste an external URL o	f the file or upload a SRT/DFXP file	from your computer.		
ccess Control	Add Another Caption	1				
ccess Control	File Location	File Type	Language	Label	Status Actions	
cheduling	http://www.kaltura.c	SRT 🔻	English		Saved X Remo	ve
lavors					👱 Down	Iload fil
istribution					✓ Set as	s Defau
Istribution						
aptions						
dvertisements						
elated Files						
lips						
sers						
5015						

- 6. Assign a Language to the caption from the drop down menu.
- 7. Enter a Label that will appear in the player's captions drop-down menu. For example: Japanese.
- 8. In the Actions column click Set as Default.(optional use for multiple languages)
- 9. Select Add Another Caption to add additional captions files and repeat steps 5 to 7.
- 10. Click Save.

## **Editing a Captions File**

After you upload a captions file you can edit the file, remove it, or set it as the default captions file.

### To edit a captions file

- 1. Select the Content tab and click on an entry.
- 2. Select the Captions tab.
- 3. In the Actions column, click Download File.
- 4. Edit the file and then upload the file again as described in Adding Captions to an Entry.
- 5. Select Remove to delete the captions file.

# **Setting Up Captions for Display**

You will need to enable captions in your player or select a player with captions already enabled.

#### To display captions during playback

- 1. Go to the Studio tab, and select Player or Create New Player.
- 2. Select a player and select Edit from the drop down menu.
- 3. In the Edit Player window, select the Features tab.
- 4. Scroll down and select Subtitles and Transcriptions.



- 5. Check one of the following:
- **Subply Component** Uses the PlyMedia solution. For more information, see Plymedia on the Kaltura Exchange site. Additional transcoding and captioning services can also be used. See the Kaltura Exchange for more information.
- **Captions on video** The subtitles/captions will be displayed as an overlay at the bottom of the video area. You can control the area where the captions will appear on the player.
- **Captions for accessibility** Creates a dedicated area under the video area to display captions. Check this option if you intend to use the 508 Player.
- 6. Click Options to modify the text style and background. See Captions Options.
- 7. Click Apply.

### Viewing an Entry with Captions in a Player



- 1. Select the entry that you added the captions file to.
- 2. Click Preview and Embed.
- 3. In the Player window select the player to use to display this entry.
- 4. Use the URL indicated in the View as a standalone page with this player.

The following is an example of an entry with 2 subtitle files where the default language is English.

Embedding: open_sl	hut	<b>9</b> 8
00:46 / 01:4	<complex-block></complex-block>	
· · ·	508 player  vout and functionality (advertising, subtitles, etc)	
Select Flash Delivery T		
	ally adjusts to the viewer's bandwidth, while Progressive Download allows buffering of the	he
This video does not have video	ces by fall-forward to HTML5 o flavors compatible with IPhone & IPad. Read more ces by fall-forward to HTML5	
_	o flavors compatible with IPhone & IPad. Read more	
-	to use HTTPS secure delivery e with this player: www.kaltura.co.cc/tiny/qc6l	
Embed Code:	<pre></pre> object id="kaltura_player_1341837626"	
	Select Code	

# **Captions Options**

The following lists the options you can use to customize your caption file display.

Text Effect:
Background V
Glow Color (applicable if "Glow" selected):
Glow Blur:
4
Background Color (applicable if "Background" selected):
Font Size:
12
Font Family:
Arial 🗸
Prompt (text that appears on captions selector):
Captions
Tooltip:

# **Live Streaming**

This section contains the following topics:

- Live Streaming Using the KMC
- Workflow for Setting up Live Streaming

# Live Streaming Using the KMC

Kaltura's Live Streaming solution is the easiest and most cost effective way to incorporate live streaming video into your website or application. Backed by world-class data centers, and fault tolerant software architecture, Kaltura is able to provide the reliability and capacity necessary to handle encoders that are supported by Akamai.

You can broadcast live streams through a Content Delivery Network (CDN) such as Akamai, through the KMC. The encoding software installed (such as FMLE) encodes your real-time camera signal and sends it out through a secure RTMP connection to the CDN. Then, using a Kaltura Player, you can embed the live broadcast in your websites. You can set the live stream entry metadata and specify broadcasting settings in the KMC in the same way VOD content is managed.

By using a CDN for live streaming, you guarantee a better experience for your viewers world-wide.



**NOTE:** In the Kaltura SaaS Edition, Live Streaming is an additional service. To add Live Streaming to your account, contact your Account Manager. In Kaltura Community Edition, Live Streaming requires a Flash Streaming Server software installed such as Adobe FMS, Red5 and Wowza or alternatively, an Akamai CDN account.

To enable live streaming for your account

• Contact us or call +1-800-871-5224

After your account is enabled you can set up Kaltura's Live Streaming service.

# Workflow for Setting up Live Streaming

This section describes how to set up the KMC, the encoder, and a device for the live streaming service.

2	_0
	5
_	1
-	V

- **1.** Set up the Hardware and Software.
- **2.** Create a Live Streaming Entry in the KMC.
- 3. Configure the Live Streaming Parameters in the KMC
- 4. Set up the Broadcasting Computer.
- **5.** View the Broadcasting Setup (optional).

### Setting up the Hardware and Software

### To set up the hardware and software for live streaming

- 1. Download the Flash Media Live Encoder (FMLE) from here.
- 2. Install the FMLE on your local Windows machine.



**NOTE:** Be certain that your system has the minimum requirements. See http://www.adobe.com/products/flashmediaserver/flashmediaencoder/systemreqs/ for details.

3. Connect your camera to the installed computer.

## Creating a Live Streaming Entry in the KMC

- To create a live streaming entry in the KMC
- 1. Login into the KMC and go to the Upload tab.
- 2. Select Live Stream Entry.



The Add New Stream window appears.

Add New Stream	<b>9</b> 8
Name*	
Description:	
Primary encoder IP:*	
Secondary encoder IP:*	
Broadcast password (optional):	
* required field	
Sav	/e

**3.** Fill in the values and click Save.

The following table describes the input fields.

Field	Description
Name	The name of the stream that will appear in the KMC entries list.
Description	A description of the stream (optional).
Primary encoder IP	The public address that will be used for streaming (the computer where the client encoder such as Adobe FMLE is installed).
	Note: your IP address can be retrieved by browsing from the computer where the FMLE is installed to <a href="http://www.whatismyip.com/">http://www.whatismyip.com/</a> 0.0.0.0 cannot be used as your IP address.
Secondary encoder IP	If you are using two encoders (for redundancy), fill in the secondary encoder IP. If you are using a single encoder, copy the Primary encoder IP to the Secondary encoder IP field.
Broadcasting password	This password is required in the client encoder (FMLE) software. If you do not enter a password the system will automatically create one for you and it will be displayed in the Live Stream tab of the entry details window under "Broadcasting credentials".



**NOTE:** When using Kaltura's SaaS edition, Kaltura will provision your new Live Stream with the CDN (for example, Akamai). The CDN will then populate the information about the new Live Stream to the CDN's servers. This may incur up to a 20 minute delay, for the stream to become available for broadcasting. You should always provision your Live Stream ahead of time, and be certain that you have at least 20 minutes lead time to going live.

Kaltura's uses Akamai as the default CDN. You can also use a CDN other than Akamai, however, you will have to provision the stream via the CDN portal, or through technical support, and then ask Kaltura Support to create a live stream entry pointing to the provisioned stream.

## **Multiple Bitrate Encoding**

To maintain the best possible viewing experience and video quality, it is often necessary to stream different versions of the encoded video to different clients using different devices and over variable connection speeds.

Multiple Bit Rate (MBR) encoding is designed to adjust to fluctuations in bandwidth while maintaining an acceptable quality. MBR combines several bit rates into a single encoded file. When the file is accessed, the player determines the appropriate bit rate based on the available bandwidth, and then retrieves the encoded file at the optimal bit rate. If the available bandwidth decreases for any reason, a stream at a lower bit rate can then be served. With a lower bit rate, there is often a decrease in quality. See Video Delivery Settings for more information.

## Configuring the Live Stream Parameters in the KMC

To configure the live stream parame
-------------------------------------

- 1. Go the Content tab in the KMC.
- 2. Click on the Live Stream Entry in the Entries table.
- 3. Select the Live Stream tab.

dit Entry - DZ Li	ive Stream test	<b>?</b> 8
Metadata		
Thumbnails	Broadcasting settings-Client Encoder	<b>–</b>
Thumbhairs	Broadcasting with a client encoder creates the best results but requires a dedicated hardware and software. The client encoder will require the parameters listed below. if you need help configuring your encoder,	
Access Control	please refer to our help section	
Scheduling		
Live Stream	Broadcasting URLs	
	Primary URL: rtmp://p.ep50477.i.akamaientrypoint.net/EntryPoint	≣
Custom Data	Backup URL: rtmp://b.ep50477.i.akamaientrypoint.net/EntryPoint ?	
Distribution	Stream name: 1_nhf21iak_%i@50477	
Captions		
Advertisements	bitrate configuration	
Related Files	This allows you to create multiple bitrates broadcast In order to allow the player to select the optimal bitrate, these settings must be alligned with your client encoder (FME)	
	Bit Rate null null	
	1. 300 v Kbps 320 x 240 v	
	2. 50 v Kbps 0 x 0 x 2	
	3. 50 v Kbps 0 x 0 x	•
Broadcasting cred	entials	
User Name:	77659 (?)	
Password:	778b3114	
Encoders IPs		
Primary encoder II	<b>62.219.132.160</b>	
Secondary encode	r IP: 62.219.132.160	
Export XML to FM	E	

- 4. Set the MBR. (Optional)
  - a. When broadcasting with MBR the player will choose the most appropriate bitrate to

stream. Be certain that your client encoder is aligned with the same settings.

b. Determining the right bit rates for your Live Stream is generally dependent on the quality of your video, the size of the player your viewers will use, the bandwidth your client encoder computer has and the bandwidth of your viewers. It is common to have widths of 240, 360, 480, 720 and 1080 with HD content streaming. If you are broadcasting a webcam, it is generally best to use the default KMC settings. To get professional assistance, please contact Kaltura's support.

## Setting up the Broadcasting Computer

#### To set up the broadcasting computer

- 1. Connect your camera /recording device to the broadcasting computer.
- 2. Run the Adobe Flash Media Live Encoder (FMLE).
- **3.** Select the relevant recording Device from the drop-down menu. Copy the details of the live entry to the Flash Media Live Encoder. You can copy the details manually, or use the "Export XML to FME" option.
  - a. Enter or copy the Primary URL in the FMS URL field, and the Backup URL in the Secondary URL as configured in the KMC.
  - b. Enter the Stream Name as displayed in the KMC.
  - c. Enter the MBR settings if you have defined them. See Multiple Bitrate Encoding.
  - d. Use the Preset dropdown menu in the FMLE to select the MBR.

Enter the Bit Rates as configured in the KMC. If you select to Save to File, you must append %i to the file name.



**NOTE:** When using the FMLE, the Stream name includes the %i. If you are using an encoder other the FMLE, you must append "\_1" to the Stream name.

- **4.** Click Connect.
- 5. Enter the Broadcasting credentials, (User Name and Password) as configured in the KMC Live Stream tab and click OK. The system will prompt you twice for the Broadcasting credentials.



6. Click Start.

You are now broadcasting live.

7. When your broadcast is finished, click Stop.

## Viewing the Broadcasting Setup (Optional)

- To view the broadcasting setup
- 1. Return to the KMC and select the Content tab.
- 2. In the KMC Entries Table, click the Preview & Embed link for the live stream entry.

Name: Bitrates:	DZ Live Stream test 300 kbps, 320 x 240
	Play   Play
Select Pla	
	er includes both layout and functionality (advertising, subtitles, etc)
If you enable	rt iPhone & iPad with HTML5 e the HTML5 player, the viewer device will be automatically detected. Read more outside KMC: www.kaltura.com/tiny/05qf
Embed Co	ode: <object <="" id="kaltura_player_1323677732" th=""></object>
	Select Code

- 3. Select the player from the drop-down menu and copy the Embed Code.
- 4. Paste the Embed Code within an HTML page.
- 5. Browse to the page where the embed code was inserted and press Play on the video player.

## **Advanced Live Streaming Configuration Options**

There are multiple factors that can influence the video quality for live streaming. To receive good results you should optimize the settings based on your specific needs.

The following table can be used as a starting point for optimization and setup. A rough estimate is provided for the different factors, based on the video dimensions.

Video Dimensions	Bitrate Required (Mbps)	Camera Requirements	FMLE HW Requirements	Broadcaster Uplink, Viewer Downlink Requirements (Mbps)	Throughput example for 1000 concurrent viewers of 1 hour broadcast
320x240	0.3	support frame size &bitrate	Dual Core 2GB RAM	0.4	135 GB
640x480	1.4		Quad Core Xeon 3GB RAM	2	630 GB
1024x720	3.5		8 Core Xeon 3GB RAM	5	1600 GB

For more information about setting up these parameters in the Flash Media Live Encoder, as well as additional advanced configuration options, see the FMLE guide.

## CHAPTER 14

# **Content Authoring Tools**

This section contains the following topics:

- The Content Tab
- Editing Entries
- Entries Table
- Clipping and Trimming Media Files
- Choosing a Thumbnail for your Video

# **The Content Tab**

The Content tab is used to manage your media library and provides all the tools you need, in one intuitive interface. You can organize your content and metadata, easily search media, edit, moderate, create playlists, and much more through the Content tab.

The Content Tab has the following tabs:

- Entries Tab
- Moderation Tab
- Playlists Tab
- Syndication Tab
- Categories Tab

# **Entries Tab**

Your first step in the KMC is to upload files to the Entries Table. See The Upload Tab.

After you upload content to the KMC you can perform various modifications to your content, for example, categorize, clip, and create ads. However, the most logical thing you may want to do is to embed your video into your website. See Preview and Embed.

# **Entries Table**

The Entries Table lists the entries in your account and provides a way to edit the entry's specific metadata and settings. You can perform several actions on a specific entry or several entries simultaneously. To choose multiple entries, check the boxes near the entry name and then, select Bulk Actions at bottom of the list. You can search through entries; delete entries, preview entries as well as other actions.

Kaltura Dashbo		Content dication Cat	Studio tegories	Analytics	Settin	gs	Administration	Upload 💙	× ariel.hitron@	§kaltura.com (Logout)	User Manual   Sup	
Intries	Se	earch Entries		Q							Ret	fresh
ilter by Categories		Thumbnail	ID	Name	Туре	Plays	Created On 🗸	Duration	Status	Actions		
All Categories (No Filter)	*	Ð	0_kpxyx7no	Live Stream DZ		0	07/05/12 14:53	00:00	Provisioning	Select Action		• Î
Adventure     Foreign     Drama			0_4tm2md8x	Inception New Featu	Ш	0	07/05/12 13:50	00:12	Ready	Select Action		•
Comedy			0_k57bpsk3	Draft Entry		0	07/05/12 13:41	00:00	No Media	Select Action		•
Fantasy			0_r82thfpc	<u>The Killer Inside Me N</u>	Ħ	0	06/23/12 10:32	02:30	Ready	Select Action		•
	٩	Set Scheduli Set Access (		Middle Men New Trail	Ħ	0	06/23/12 10:32	02:32	Ready	Select Action		•
	C	Edit Tags Edit Categori Add to New (	es Category/Playlist		Ħ	0	06/23/12 10:32	02:27	Ready	Select Action		•
arch Categories	_ C	Change Own Download Delete	ier	Last Airbender		0	06/23/12 10:32	00:18	Ready	Select Action		•
dditional Filters		Bulk Actions	•				1 2 Next 1-50 (	of 65			Show rows: 50	Ŧ

Use the Entries tab to perform the following actions on multiple entries:

- Set Scheduling See Content Scheduling for applying scheduling to a single entry.
- Set Access Control
- Edit Tags
  - o Add Tags
  - o Remove Tags
- Edit Categories
  - o Add Categories
  - o Remove Categories
- Add to New Category Playlist
  - o Add to New Category
  - o Add to New Playlist
- Change Owner
- Download
- Delete

## **Set Scheduling**

Set specific scheduling parameters for your content.

#### To set a scheduling for an entry

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Set Scheduling from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Enter the scheduling times that should be applied to the selected entries.
- 5. Click Apply to all Selected Entries.

Set Scheduling	<b>9</b> 8
This will override Scheduling set	tings for all selected entries
Any Time	
Specific Range	
Note: Time Zone used is (GMT+3	)
Start Date:	12:00 am +
End Date:	12:00 am
Clear Dates	
Apply to All Se	elected Entries

## **Set Access Control**

Set access control permissions for your entries. (See Managing Access Control Profiles for more details).

#### **To set access control permissions for entries**

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Set Access Control from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select the access control profile that should be applied to the selected entries or click Add Profile to create a profile. See Creating an Access Profile.
- 5. Click Apply to all Selected Entries.

Set Access Contro	ol Profile		28
This will override Access Co	ontrol Profile settings for all selected	d entries	
Access Control Profile:	Default		Add Profile
Profile Name:	Default		
Description:	default access control profile		
Domains:	Any Domain		
Countries:	Any Country		
IPs:	Any IP		
Advanced Security:			
	Apply to All Selected Entries		

## Edit - Add Tags to and Entry

You can add tags to entries in the KMC that will propagate to other applications.



- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- **3.** Select Add Tags from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Enter tags to append to all selected entries.
- 5. Click Save Changes.

Add Tags 🔹 🤋 😣
Enter tags to be appended to all selected entries. Use a comma to add multiple tags.
Save Changes

## Edit - Remove Tags from an Entry

You can remove tags from entries in the KMC. Removal will propagate to other applications.

#### To remove tags from an entry

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Remove Tags from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Enter tags to append to all selected entries.
- 5. Click Save Changes.
| Remove Tags 🔹 🤉 🤉 🤉   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Select the tags you wish to remove from the selected entries<br>(use the ctrl key for multiple selection) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| fish  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Remove  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## **Edit - Add Categories**

You can add categories to entries in the KMC that will propagate to other applications.

- To add categories to an entry
- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Add Categories from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select or search for a category to apply to all the selected entries.
- 5. Click Apply.

Select C	Categories 🛛 😵
Search Cat	egories
	KMS Root
	Adventure
	Foreign
	Drama
	Thriller
	Comedy
	Fantasy

Apply

## **Edit - Remove Categories**

You can remove categories from entries in the KMC. Removal will propagate to other applications.

#### **To remove categories** from an entry

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Remove Categories from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Check the categories to remove from the all selected entries.
- 5. Click Apply.

Remove Categories	? 8							
Remove selected entries from these categories:								
Drama								
Comedy								
Adventure>sub								
Apply								

### Add to New Category

You can select multiple entries in the entries list and then click "Add to New Category to create a new category with the specific entries included. See Adding Editing a Specific Category for information on how to create categories.

### Add to New Playlist

You can select multiple entries in the entries list and then click "Add to New Playlist" to create a new playlist with the specific entries included in the playlist. See the Playlists Tab for information on how to create playlists.

### To create and add entries to a new playlist

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Add to new Playlist from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Check the entries to add to the new playlist.
- 5. Click Apply.

### **Change Entry Owner**

By default, channel managers are the channel owner for any applicative need. A channel owner cannot be deleted by other channel managers; however you can set a new owner for an entry.



### **Download Files**

	То	download	files	to	your	computer	for	offline	use
--	----	----------	-------	----	------	----------	-----	---------	-----

1. Select an entry and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page and select Download from the drop down menu.

Note that you can download more than one entry at a time, as long as the entries appear on the same page of the entries list.

A flavor (format/quality) selection window is displayed for the video files you select to download.

 Select your preferred flavor from the drop-down menu and click "Submit" to proceed. A message will appear stating that links to your downloaded files will be sent to your email. Click "OK" to proceed.



### **Delete Multiple Entries**

You can delete multiple entries in the KMC.

- To delete entries
- 1. Select the Content tab and then select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry or multiple entries and select Bulk Actions on the bottom of the page.
- 3. Select Delete from the drop-down menu.

- Select the entries to remove. A warning message is displayed.
- 5. Click Remove.

## **Preview and Embed**

To preview and get the embed code for entries in the Entries Table; click the Preview & Embed" link under the Actions column on the main list of entries. In the new window that opens, you can preview the entry and select the player that you would like to use. See Embedding a Player on your Site.

### To preview and embed your content to a website

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. Click on an entry in the Entries table.
- 3. Select Preview and Embed in the actions drop down menu.
- 4. In the new window that opens, you can preview the entry and select the player that you would like to use. See Embedding a Player on your Site.
- **5.** Grab the embed code.

🔆 Kaltura	Dashboard		Content	Studio	Analytics Settings	Ad	ministratior	u Upload 🛩					Debbie
Entries Moderation	Playlists	Syndi	cation Cat	egories							Upload Control	Drop Folders	s (?
Entries		Sea	rch Entries		Q							က္ R	efresh
Categories			Thumbnail	ID	Name	Туре	Plays	Created On 🗸	Duration	Status	Actions		
▼ □ All image	*		and the second s	0_2rn0a468	open shut	H	0	06/05/12 18:21	00:34	Ready	Select Action	a construction of the second s	
video				0_50gkfahb	open shut	H	0	06/04/12 19:18	01:00	Ready	Delete View Details		
hd content				0_eq28zru7	open_shut	Ħ	0	06/04/12 19:17	00:11	Ready	Select Action	•	
fish			Ð	0_7q2y0sfw	debble live	1	0	06/04/12 16:14	00:00	Ready	Select Action	•	
		0		0_ehtb0z9v	open shut	н	0	06/04/12 15:56	01:48	Ready	Select Action	•	
				0_a81qlig1	Excellent web quality video (1200kbps)	Ħ	0	05/30/12 17:18	00:30	Ready	Select Action	•	
			and a line	0_jssf2yn6	Normal web quality video (400kbps)	н	0	05/30/12 17:18	00:30	Ready	Select Action	•	
earch Categories dditional Filters		E	Bulk Actions				1	1-10 of 10			Sh	ow rows: 50	

## **Editing Entries**

### To edit an entry

• Click on an entry name. The Edit Entry window is displayed. Use the Edit Entry window to manage all information relating to the entry.

Edit Entry - Incep	otion New Feat	urette - The Characters		_	_	-	<b>9</b> 8
Metadata							
Thumbnails	Name:	Inception New Featurette - The Cha	racters	Entry ID:	0_1801h9td		
mumbhans	Description:						
Access Control					XE		
Scheduling	Tags:	leonardo dicaprio × ellen page				ay	Ĵ. T
Flavors		marion cotillard × cillian murph	У ^			21	•
Distribution	Categories: 🖍	Enter category names				- 1/1	al in in
Captions				Preview &	Embed	Clip This	Trim This
Advertisements							
Related Files	Reference ID:			Creator:	ariel.hitron@ka	iltura.com	
Related Files				Created on:	06/23/2012		
Clips				Landing Page:			
Users				Туре:	Video	Duration:	02:00
				Moderation:	Auto approved		
				Plays:	0		
				,	-		
		Save	Save & Close			Previous Entry	Next Entry >

## **Edit Entry Tabs**

- **Metadata**: Use to display the entry and edit basic metadata: Name, Description, Tags, Categories and Reference ID. See Managing Metadata for more information. For video and audio entries, you can also trim or clip the entry. You can see the Entry ID, type of entry (video, video mix, image or audio), moderation status (approved, flagged for review or rejected), flags, duration, date of creation, creator, rating, votes count and number of plays. In this tab you can also trim or create multiple clips from a single video. Each clip gets its own embed code and metadata, while remaining associated to the original video. Trimming and clipping tools are available both to administrators and site users. See Clipping and Trimming Media Files. You can leverage metadata fields to tag, manage, search and expose content. Populate out-of-the-box fields, or create your own custom metadata schema.
- **Thumbnails**: Use to upload thumbnails, grab a thumbnail from video, crop thumbnails and select a default thumbnail. You can generate thumbnails from videos or upload external images. Capture, crop and adjust to get the best result. See Choosing a Thumbnail for your Video.
- Access Control: Use to assign an access control profile to an entry. See Managing Access Control Profiles.
- Scheduling: Use to specify date ranges for scheduling an entry. See Content Scheduling.
- **Flavors**: Lists all related flavors. Use to convert an entry to additional flavors or to re-convert existing flavors. See Transcoding and Processing.
- **Distribution:** Lists distribution channels associated with an entry and use to manage distributors. See Content Distribution.
- **Captions:** Use to manage captions. Use to upload captions, link to external caption files, and to add additional captions to an entry. See Subtitles and Captions.
- Advertisements: Use to create midrolls and overlays for each entry. Add cue points to your video files to enable time-based functionality such as chaptering, display of related files at specific points, and timed advertisements. See Adding a Midroll.
- **Related Files:** Use to upload related files and to assign the files to an entry. See Uploading and Modifying Related Files.

- **Clips:** Displayed if clips were created from an original video or audio entry. See Clipping an Entry.
- **Users:** Use to add editing and publishing rights for additional end-users to work with this entry across applications. See Users Tab.

## **Clipping and Trimming Media Files**

You can create clips from existing videos, set in and out points. Each clip becomes its own media entry encoded to multiple flavors, and can be downloaded, distributed and played back on any device. You can also trim the length of a video directly from within the Kaltura Management Console. The clipping tool enables you to edit your videos visually or by setting the start time and end time of your clip. For additional information see Server Side Clipping and Trimming.

Clipping creates a new entry from an existing entry and allows you to specify the start and end time for the new entry. For example you can clip an entry that can be used to create a 2 minute intro video to a long lecture, or clip part of an entry, such as homework assignments. You can also clip a long lecture to several shorter clips divided by subjects. The new entry will point to its source entry so that you can always identify the source entry for the clip.

Trimming does not create a new entry. Sometimes, you may want to trim the start and/or end of a video to remove redundant parts. Trimming is performed on the source flavor of the entry, modifying that video permanently.

### **To clip a media entry**

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select an entry from the Entries Table.
- **2.** In the Metadata tab, click Clip This.

Edit Entry - open	_shut						28
Metadata							
Metadata	Name:	open_shut		Entry Id:	0_ehtb0z9v		
Thumbnails	Description:						
Access Control				_		4	
Scheduling	Tags:	boys × twins ×			Play		
Flavors	Categories: 🎽	Type in a category		_			
Distribution	Reference ID:						
Captions				Preview & Emb	ed	Clip This	Trim This
Advertisements				Creator:	debbie.zioni@k	altura.com	
Related Files				Created at:	06/04/2012		
				Landing Page:			
Clips							
Users				Туре:	Video	Duration:	01:48
				Moderation:	Auto approved		
				Plays:	0		
			Save Save & Close		<	Previous Entry	Next Entry >
The Clipping To	ol window is	displayed.					

3. Click Add New Clip.

Clipping Tool	8
Add N Start Tim End Time Title: Descripti	e: 00:00:10:800 ◆ open_shut
0000 00:15 00:30 00:45 01:00 100% ▼ 4 ► Set In Set Out 4	01:15 01:30 01:45
Save	

- **4.** Use the arrow to choose the granularity level for the display. The choices are:
  - o 100%
  - o 5 sec
  - o 1 sec
  - o Frames.
- **5.** Press Play and click Set In as the starting point of the video clip, or alternatively, select the start time.
- 6. Select Set Out as the end point of the video clip, or alternatively select the end time.
- 7. Provide a New name and Description for the clip (optional).
- 8. Click Save.
  - The new clip appears in the Entries Table.

This Clips tab is available after you create a clip. The read-only list of all created clips includes the following information:

- o Name
- o ID
- o Creator
- o Plays
- o Duration

**To trim a media entry** 

- 1. Select the Content tab and then select an entry from the Entries Table.
- **2.** In the Metadata tab, click Clip This.
- **3.** Select Add New Clip.
- 4. Use the trimming timeline or enter exact in and out times.
- 5. Press Play and click Set In as the starting point of the video clip or alternatively, select the start time.
- 6. Select Set Out as the end point of the video clip, or alternatively select the end time.
- 7. Provide a New name and Description for the clip (optional)
- 8. Click Save.

The trimmed video appears in the entries table.

## **Troubleshooting Trimming and Clipping**

The Trim and Clip feature may be disabled if your transcoding profile does not include the flavor for the file you want to trim or clip.

When you upload content, new flavors are created from the Source flavor and transcoded to the flavors you define in your Transcoding Settings.

#### To add the Source flavor to your transcoding profile

- 1. Go to Settings tab and select the Transcoding Settings tab.
- 2. At the bottom of the page, click Switch to Advanced mode.
- 3. Click on the name of your default transcoding profile
- 4. In the Edit Transcoding profile check the Source flavor and then Save Changes.

### **Users Tab**

The Users tab is displayed when your account is configured to support the end-user management feature.

The Users tab provides information about the users that are associated with the entry. The users are

- the creator of the entry in Kaltura usually the person that uploaded the media
- the administrative owner of the entry the user that is assigned with ownership to manage the entry. By default it is the entry creator, however you can assign ownership to a different user from this tab.

By editing the co-editors and co-publisher fields, you can add editing and publishing rights for additional end-users to work with this entry across applications.

#### To edit the entry's users settings

- 1. Go to the Content tab and then select an entry from the Entries Table.
- **2.** Select the Users tab.

Edit Entry - kisse	s_NEW			98
Metadata				
	Uploaded By:	debbie.zioni@kaltura.com		
Thumbnails	Administrative Owner:	debbie.zioni@kaltura.com Change Owner		
Access Control				
Scheduling	Additional End-Users			
Flavors	Here you can add editing and publishing r	ights for additional end-users to work with this entry across applications.		
Havors	Co-Editors:			
Distribution	Co-Publishers:			
Captions				
Advertisements				
Related Files				
Users				
		Save & Close	Previous Entry	Next Entry >
Click Change O	wner.			
Change O	wner	0 8		
Change of				
Set a new owne	er to this entry			
Enter user name	e or user id			
		Cancel		

- 4. Enter the new owner name and click Save.
- 5. The CoEditor(s) and Co-Publishers field is displayed only when configured in your acount.
- 6. Click Save and Close.

3.

## Choosing a Thumbnail for your Video

You can select a thumbnail for your video after the file transfer is complete and the file is embedded in your website. Thumbnails are configured in the **Thumbnails** tab in the **Contents** tab. By default, a thumbnail is automatically grabbed from the first frames of the video. You can choose to have multiple thumbnails of different qualities associated with your video, or grab any frame from the video to use as a thumbnail.

You can search for a thumbnail and its dimensions, size, distributors and status and perform the following actions: Set as default, Download and Delete.

#### To edit the thumbnails associated with the video

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. Select an entry and select the Thumbnails tab.
- 3. Select Upload, Grab from Video or New Crop.
  - Upload uploads an external image as a thumbnail.
  - o Select Upload and specify the file location and name, then click Open.
  - o Grab from Video -Capture a new thumbnail from the video.

Play the video in the "Grab from Video" window. Pause on the frame you want to use and click the thumbnail capture icon (camera). A thumbnail will be captured from the highest quality video flavor. Exit to return to the Thumbnails tab.

- New Crop Modify thumbnail dimensions.
- 4. Select a thumbnail and create a thumbnail with a new position and size.
- 5. Adjust the display area with the handles on the image and click **Generate Thumbnail**.

Kaltu	ıra ₀	ashboard C	ontent	Studio	Analytics	Settings	Administration	Upload 💙
Manage	Edit Entry - Exc	ellent web qual	ity vide	o (1200kbps)	_	_		0 0
<b>ilters</b> earch Entri	Metadata	Add Thumbnail	•					
dditional	Thumbnails	Upload		Dimensions	Size (KB)	Distributors	Status	Action
Categories All (: fit	Access Control Scheduling Flavors	Grab from Video		640 X 480	29	NOT REQUIRED	Ready	<ul> <li>✓ Set as Default</li> <li>⊻ Download</li> <li>X Delete</li> </ul>
irr	Distribution							
				Sa	Ive Save & Clos	е	< Pre	evious Entry Next Entry >

The default thumbnail is now displayed in the entries list.

## CHAPTER 15

# **Publishing to your Site**

This section contains the following topics:

- Embedding a Player with a Single Entry on your Site
- Embedding a Player with a Playlist on your Site
- Adding the Flavor Selector Module

## Embedding a Player with a Single Entry on your Site

To embed a player on your site

- 1. Create a Player. See Configuring the Player Basics Settings.
- **2.** Add content (an entry) to the player. See Adding Content to a Player. The Entries table from the Content tab is displayed.
- **3.** Click Preview and Embed. The Embedding window is displayed to select the delivery options.



- **4.** Select your preferred player skin from the drop-down menu. See Configuring the Player Features. Select the Flash Delivery Type. See Video Delivery Settings.
- 5. Check Support Mobile devices by fall forward to HTML5, if applicable. See Mobile Support.
- 6. Check Modify embed code to use HTPPS secure delivery.
- 7. You can view a standalone page with this player by clicking on the provided link.
- 8. Click Select Code or click CTRL+C (on a PC) or option+C on a Mac to copy the embed code to your clipboard, or grab the Embed Code, and add/paste it to your website HTML source.

## Embedding a Player with a Playlist on your Site

After you've created a playlist, and have assigned the playlist to a player, see Designing and Configuring A Player you can publish the player to your site.



- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Playlists tab.
- 2. Locate the playlist you want to publish on your website and click Preview & Embed.

aylists	Sea	rch Playlists	9				C Refre
ditional Filtera		ID	Name	Playlist Type	Created On 🗸 🗸	Actions	
eated between		0_eyczogva	Most,recent,videos	Rule Based	05/30/12 17:18	Select Action	
ar Dataa		0_52waedqm	Most.popular_xidepa	Rule Based	05/30/12 17:18	Delote View Defails	Add Rule Based Playlist
		0_ptodhv5b	Recent Dea Videoa	Rule Dased	05/00/12 17:10	Select Action	
		0_rg#4ihc	My means	Rule Based	05/30/12 17:18	Select Action	t:

The Embedding window is displayed to select the delivery options.

Playlist ID: Most popular videos	8
open_shut 00:34	
open_shut 00:59	
Sample Big Buck Bunny Trailer (HD) 00:33	
Excellent web quality video (1200kbps) 00:29	
Select Player: KDP3 Playlist Light skin Vertical	
Kaltura player includes both layout and functionality (advertising, subtitles, etc)	
Select Flash Delivery Type: Progressive Download (HTTP) 💌	
Adaptive Streaming automatically adjusts to the viewer's bandwidth, while Progressive Download all	ows
buffering of the content. Read more	
Support Mobile devices by fall-forward to HTML5 If you enable the HTML5 player, the viewer device will be automatically detected. Read more	
Modify embed code to use HTTPS secure delivery	
View a standalone page with this player: www.kaltura.co.cc/tiny/qc6l	
Embed Code: <pre></pre> <pre< td=""><td></td></pre<>	
Select Code	

- 3. Select your preferred player skin from the drop-down menu. See Configuring the Player Features.
- 4. Select the Flash Delivery Type. See Flash Delivery Type.
- 5. Check Support Mobile devices by fall forward toHTML5. See Mobile Support.
- 6. Click Select Code.

7. Click CTRL+C (on a PC) or option+C on a Mac to copy the embed code to your clipboard or grab the Embed Code, and add/paste it to your website HTML source.

## Video Delivery Settings

You can choose between the following types of video delivery settings

- HTTP Progressive Download Delivery– Allows you to pause the video playback and wait for the content to download. Typically used where viewers have very limited bandwidth.
- Adaptive Streaming RTMP Delivery with Adaptive Bitrate
   – Allows adaptive bit-rate. The player
   can adjust the video quality on the fly based on network and CPU conditions. Based on RTMP
   protocol.
- Secure Transport (RTMPE)
- Akamai HD Network– Allows adaptive bit-rate. The player can adjust the video quality on the fly based on network and CPU conditions. Based on Akamai CDN technology.

This option requires that the CDN associated with your publisher account is Akamai which is the default for all Kaltura customers.

For more information see Best Practices for Multi-Device Transcoding.

## **HTTP Progressive Download Delivery**

With HTTP Progressive download, the digital media begins downloading and after a specified amount of data becomes available to the video player, the media begins to play while the rest of the data continues to buffer.

Embedding: kisses_NEW	8 8
Select Player: KDP3 Dark skin	
Kaltura player includes both layout and functionality (advertising, subtitles, etc) Select Flash Delivery Type: Progressive Download (HTTP)	
Adaptive Streaming automatically adjusts to the viewer's bandwidth, while Progressive Download all buffering of the content. Read more	ows
Support Mobile devices by fall-forward to HTML5 If you enable the HTML5 player, the viewer device will be automatically detected. Read more	
Modify embed code to use HTTPS secure delivery	
View a standalone page with this player: www.kaltura.co.cc/tiny/qc6l	
Embed Code: xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/terms/"	
Select Code	

## Adaptive Streaming RTMP Delivery with Adaptive Bitrate

Adaptive Bit Rate (ABR) streaming is a technique of detecting a viewer's bandwidth capabilities in real time, and then adjusting the quality of the video stream accordingly, always delivering the best possible picture quality. ABR streaming results in less buffering, fast start time and an overall better experience for both high-speed and low-speed connections.

ABR dynamically shifts bandwidth to higher and lower levels based on availability. For Adaptive Bitrate Streaming to work, a video is first encoded at different bitrates to accommodate varying bandwidth connections. Each bitrate version is sliced up into tiny fragments — typically 2 to 10 seconds. The Kaltura player pulls fragments from the different encodings and inserts them into the stream as bandwidth dictates resulting in faster video start times and a continuous, uninterrupted video experience.

For example, a movie called The "Big Movie" is streaming. The end user would view a smoothly playing video. Unknown to the user, multiple streams are actually available and may be seamlessly switched to, if their connection drops lower or improves. The key here is "seamless". When adaptive bit streaming is done correctly, there should be no interruption of playback.

For The Big Movie, a player might be serving up the following all at once:

The Big Movie @ 2612 kbps

The Big Movie @ 1600 kbps The Big Movie @ 1200 kbps The Big Movie @ 800 kbps **USE CASE** 

If a user's connection dropped from over 2.5 Mbps to 1600kbps, the Kaltura player would switch, again seamlessly, from the 2612 bit rate down to the 1600. Often the Kaltura player is designed to begin playing using the lowest possible bit rate so that playback starts immediately. For this example, the 800 kbps stream might be served up first and then as the Kaltura player realizes that the user can handle a higher bitrate, the streaming rate would then be switched up higher.

Embedding: open_shut	8
Select Player: KDP3 Dark skin 🔹	
Kaltura player includes both layout and functionality (advertising, subtitles, etc)	
Select Flash Delivery Type: Adaptive Streaming (RTMP)	
Adaptive Streaming automatically adjusts to the viewer's bandwidth, while Progressive Download allo buffering of the content. Read more	ws
Support Mobile devices by fall-forward to HTML5 If you enable the HTML5 player, the viewer device will be automatically detected. Read more	
Modify embed code to use HTTPS secure delivery	
View a standalone page with this player: www.kaltura.co.cc/tiny/qc6l	
Embed Code: <pre></pre> <pre< td=""><td></td></pre<>	
Select Code	

## Secure Transport RTMPE

### Akamai HD Network – Allows adaptive bit-rate

Akamai's advanced adaptive bitrate streaming technology intelligently adjusts the bit rate of a video

stream to ensure the optimum playback quality based on changing bandwidth conditions. It also allows for flavor switching without the loss of content. You can send streaming video over HTTP from an ordinary web server for playback on iPhone and iPad, or other devices, such as desktop computers, without the limitations of Progressive Downloads.

The Akamai HD streaming protocol supports Multiple Bitrates and adaptively switches to the optimal bitrate based on network conditions for a smooth quality playback experience. An optional feature with this selected delivery setting is that the implementation also provides for media encryption and user authentication over HTTPS, allowing publishers to protect their work.

The Akamai HD Network is designed and optimized for large-scale broadcasters and film distributors to increase audience engagement and expand revenues by complementing traditional mediums such as TV and DVD with the Internet.

## **Adding the Flavor Selector Module**

Any entry is available in various transcoding flavors. The flavor selector module allows you to manually select the video flavor you want to watch, based on your preferences. The options are HD on or HD off. Note: If you are broadcasting with Adaptive RTMP then the flavor selector will be set to "auto".

#### To add the flavor's selector module

- 1. Go to Studio tab and create a new player or edit an existing one.
- 2. In the Features tab, go to the Features List and click Controls.
- 3. Check Flavor Selector.
- 4. Select Options (optional) to configure display options.
- 5. Click Preview to view your selection and click Save Changes to complete the process.

Edit Player - Hov	vering controlers	
Edit Player - Hov Basics Features Advertising Style	Vering controlers         V Your Watermark       Options         Left Play Counter       Options         Right Play Counter       Options         Flavor Selector       Options         Full Screen Button       Options         On-video Play Button       Options         Play - Pause Button       Options         V Volume Controller       Options         V Scrubber       Options	Hayer Size:       400       × 330       Preview       ✓ Auto preview         Video screen size:       400 × 330       ✓       Preview       ✓ Auto preview         Video Ratio:       16:       13.2       Standard video ratios are 16:9 and 4:3.       Is recommended that you optimize the video player size so that ratio is one of those.         ************************************
	* Features that require additional configuration. Viral & Distribution UGC & User Interaction Subtitles & Transcriptions Custom Buttons* Additional parameters and plugins	Creating together      occo     Imon → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → →
		Save Changes

## **Mobile Support**

If you enable the HTML5 player, on the Preview and Embed screen, the viewer device will be automatically detected.

If you require mobile display, you must configure a specific encoding flavor for mobile support (iPhone, iPad). To transcode a file to this flavor, go to the Edit Entry window's Flavors tab. See Transcoding and Processing and check the applicable mobile flavors.

## CHAPTER 16

# **Distribution and Syndication**

This section contains the following topics:

- Kaltura Distribution Module
- How Does Distribution Work?
- Scheduling a Video Package
- Content Syndication
- How Does Syndication Work?
- Setting Up Syndication

Kaltura offers several advanced syndication and distribution services to ensure that publishers maximize their content's reach and increase their audience. Kaltura's tools help publishers save time and money by making content distribution to a wide range of video destination sites and search engines extremely easy and streamlined.

## Kaltura Distribution Module

Kaltura's Distribution Module allows you to reach your users on the web and across any mobile device. The module provides a streamlined and simple workflow so you can distribute your content to distribution partners, such as YouTube, Hulu, Comcast, MySpace, MSN or an FTP drop folder, directly from within the KMC.

### **Key Benefits:**

- Full control over where and when the content is presented.
- Manage all of your distribution partners through a single user-friendly interface
- Deliver assets automatically as they are added to your Kaltura account, or require a manual review, at your discretion
- Seamlessly push updates to distributed content from a central dashboard
- Control scheduling sunrise and sunset per asset and per distribution partner
- Track your content across all distribution partners
- Simple and straightforward pricing, with no hidden fees or "guesstimates"
- Kaltura's system validates content to make sure it's ready to be distributed to each distributor, and alerts about any errors that need to be fixed prior to distribution (missing thumbnails, missing metadata, etc.)
- Successful delivery to each distribution partner is confirmed for each asset (if supported by the partner)

Thumbnails	Distributor	Start Date	End Date	Submission Status	Action Available
Access Control Scheduling	YouTube	08/29/2011		Distributing	
Flavors	Hulu	08/29/2011		Ready for Distribution	Distribute
Mixes Custom Data	TV.com	08/29/2011		Ready for Distribution	Distribute
Distribution					

## **How Does Distribution Work?**

Distribution ensures that your content is viewed by as many customers as possible across multiple video destination sites and improves total views for your content. Kaltura pushes the actual contents of the video assets to distribution partners for them to host on their sites. Each distribution channel is unique and depends on the distributor's capabilities and the extent of their desired exposure.

The Kaltura Distribution Module supports several workflows. You can configure simple as well as complex asset information to distribute. For example, simple asset information may include the entry name, description and tags, or metadata alone, that may be used for example, to configure ads based on metadata. More complex distribution data is configurable by your project manager and depends on the distributor's capabilities.

You can define the destinations for each video package and control aspects such as the video qualities, number and size of thumbnails, metadata, and scheduling data for each distribution destination.

You can display distributors for each entry, the distribution start and end dates, submission status.



**NOTE:** You can distribute ALL videos to be pushed automatically to the destination or you can distribute selected entries MANUALLY to be sent to the destination.



**NOTE:** Tag based or Rule Based distribution options are currently not available. You can either distribute ALL entries or NONE. If none, you can manually select which entries will be distributed to the destination.

A sample distribution configuration may contain the following components for an entry: video, metadata, thumbnail, scheduling, content availability by Kaltura and removal of distributed content.

The Distribution Module can be configured to update distributed content for metadata, so that the most updated information is propagated to the distribution site. Other customizable parameters may be configured for distribution. The Distribution Module also can be configured to remove distributed content for metadata, so that information that was propagated to the distribution site can be retracted.

With the Kaltura Distribution Module, administrators can control the destinations for each video package, and for each distribution destination. In addition, administrators can control video transcodes, multiple thumbnails in different sizes, metadata translations, scheduling data, and more.

The Distribution Module is an add-on module to the KMC, and incurs additional fees based on the amount of distribution destinations supported for your account. Additional connectors to distribution destinations

can also be developed as custom work. Contact your Kaltura project manager or sales representative for complete pricing.

## Adding a Distributor to an Entry

=		
	_	_
X	$\mathbb{Z}$	
۰.	A	

**NOTE:** To enable automatic distribution of all new entries, **contact us**, or call +1-800-871-5224. To add more distribution destinations, contact your project manager.

### To add a distributor

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. In the Entries Table, click the name of the entry you want to distribute.
- 3. In the Edit Entry window, select the Distribution tab.
- 4. Click Add / Remove Distributors.

Edit Entry - Girls_	swinging_NEV	v			<b>2</b> 8
Metadata					Add / Remove Distributors
Thumbnails	Distributor	Start Date	End Date	Submission Status	Action Available
Access Control					
Scheduling	_				
Flavors					
Custom Data					
Distribution					
Captions					
Advertisements					
Related Files					
			Save	Save & Close	< Previous Entry Next Entry >

The Add/Remove Distributors window is displayed.

Distributors			
elect below which Distributo	ributed automatically wh	nd the entry to, and check the box of en ready. Alternatively, you can m	
Distributor	All / None	Distribute Automatically	All / None
YouTube			

#### To add distributor destinations to your account

• Contact your account manager.

#### **To select distributors**

- 1. Check the distributors from the Distributor list. Click All or None at the top of the column to select or clear all the items in a column.
- Check the Distribute Automatically column to distribute an entry as soon as it is ready. Click All or None at the top of the column to select or clear all the items in a column.
   All includes all distributors. For example, if you have configured Daily Motion and YouTube as distributors, content will be distributed to both destinations.
- 3. Click Apply to save your changes and return to the Distribution tab.
- 4. Click Save Changes to complete the process.

## Scheduling a Video Package

By default, an entry's general scheduling is inherited by all distributors. The instructions here are for setting scheduling for a specific distributor. A Remote ID is the ID assigned to the distributed content in the distributor, and is only available after content has been distributed. The Remote ID may be used as a response from the distributor as well as a reference, for example, to reach the page where the distributed content appears in the distributor.



- 1. Select the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. In the Entries Table, click the name of the entry that you want to schedule.
- 3. In the Edit Entry window, select the Distribution tab and then select the name of a distributor.

t Entry - Katlui						
data						
bnails						Add / Remove Distributor
	Distributor	Start Date	End Date	Submission Status		Action Available
ss Control duling	You Tube	07/05/2012		Distributed		
ors						
om Data						
tribution						
tions						
ertisements						
ited Files						
				we & Close	< Previo	ous Entry Next Entry
Distribut	ion Details	window i	is displaye	d.		
				ube Distribution	Details	
Entry -		istributio	on - You T		Details	-
t Entry - u Tube	Katlura D	istributio	on - You T		Details	-
it Entry - ou Tube <sup>tus:</sup>	Katlura D Distributio	istributio	on - You T		Details	
it Entry - ou Tube <sub>itus:</sub> mote ID:	Katlura D Distributio Distributed 0_61op7ita	istribution n Detail	on - You T s		Details	
t Entry - ou Tube tus: note ID: rt Date:	Katlura D Distributio Distributed 0_61op7ita	n Detail	on - You T s 25 am 文		Details	
Entry - u Tube us: ote ID: t Date: Date:	Katlura D Distributio Distributed 0_610p7ita 07/05/2012	n Detail	on - You T s		Details	
t Entry - u Tube tus: note ID: t Date: Date:	Katlura D Distributio Distributed 0_610p7ita 07/05/2012	n Detail	on - You T s 25 am 文		Details	
t Entry - ou Tube tus: note ID: rt Date: I Date: etadata I	Katlura D Distributio Distributed 0_610p7ita 07/05/2012	n Detail	on - You T s 25 am 文		Details	
t Entry - ou Tube tus: note ID: rt Date: Date: etadata I ne:	Katlura D Distributio Distributed 0_61op7ita 07/05/2012	n Detail	on - You T s 25 am 文		Details	
lit Entry - ou Tube atus: mote ID: art Date: d Date: etadata I me: escription:	Katlura D Distributio Distributed 0_61op7ita 07/05/2012	n Detail	on - You T s 25 am 文		Details	
it Entry - ou Tube atus: mote ID: art Date: d Date: etadata I me: scription: gs:	Katlura D Distributed 0_61op7ita 07/05/2012	n Detail	on - You T s 25 am 文		Details	
dit Entry - ou Tube atus: emote ID: art Date: d Date: letadata I ame: escription: ags:	Katlura D Distributed 0_61op7ita 07/05/2012	istribution	on - You T s 25 am 文		Details	
dit Entry - You Tube tatus: emote ID: tart Date: nd Date: <b>Netadata I</b> ame: escription: ags: Thumbnai	Katlura D Distributed 0_61op7ita 07/05/2012	istribution	on - You T s	ube Distribution	Details	
t Entry - u Tube tus: note ID: tt Date: Date: tadata I ne: cription: s: umbnai	Katlura D Distributed 0_61op7ita 07/05/2012	Istribution         Image: stribution         Image: stribution	on - You T s	ube Distribution	Details	

- 4. Set the Start Date and End Date and enter the hour.
- 5. Click Save to return to the Distribution tab.

6. Click Save and Close to complete the process.

## Validating a Video Package

Errors may occur when you specify a video package distributor.

### To find and resolve errors

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. In the Entries Table, click the name of an entry for which you added a distributor.
- **3.** In the Edit Entry window, go to the Distribution tab and click the error name in the Submission Status column to display a description of the error.

Edit Entry - World News (01.04.10)							
Metadata							
Thumbnails	Distributor	Start Date	End Date	Submission Status			
Access Control	YouTube	03/31/2011	04/01/2011	Missing Thumbnail			
Scheduling	Tourabo	0010112011	040112011				
Flavors							
Mixes							
Custom Data							
Distribution							

You can also click on the Distributor in the Distribution tab, and then click the error name in the Distribution Details window.

4. Follow the instructions in the error description.

03/31/2011	04/01/2011	Missing Thu	mhnail	
Missing	Thumbnail			8
The selecte X 270	d entry is missing th	e following thur	nbnail dimensior	ıs: 48.
	inalize this distributio thumbnails for each			
Go to Thum	bnails Tab			

The following errors may occur:

**Missing Flavor Error** 

#### To add a flavor:



**NOTE:** If you click "Go to Flavors Tab" in the error description, skip to step 4.

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. In the Entries Table, click the name of the entry that is missing a flavor.
- 3. In the Edit Entry window, go to the Flavors tab.
- 4. In the Action column, click Convert or Reconvert for each transcoding flavor specified in the error description, and click Save Changes.

lit Entry - kisse	s_NEW					_			_	9
Metadata	Current state:	All required Transco	ding Flavors	s are availab	ole. Entry is ready fi	or publishing.				
Thumbnails	Replace Video:	Upload File	Import Fil	e Lin	k to Remote Stor	age				
Access Control	Click the Action of	dropdown menu below	to manage t	he Transco	ding Flavors for this	s entry.			ср	Refree
Scheduling	Asset ID	Transcoding Flavo	Format	Codec	Bitrate(kbps)	Dimensions	Size(KB)	Status	Action	
lavors	0_29gijvtl	Editable	flv		0	272 x 480	5314	ок	Select Action	-
Distribution	0_4afmdgzv	iPad	mp4		0	272 x 480	4833	ок	Select Action	*
	0_nue6r9zj	HD	flv		0	272 x 480	8529	ок	Select Action	-
Captions	0_68wnbrhf	Mobile (H264)	mp4		0	272 x 480	4198	ок	Select Action	*
Advertisements	0_9cn7eeyf	Mobile (3GP)	3gp		0	272 x 480	5304	ок	Select Action	-
telated Files		High - Large				null x 720			Select Action	•
Isers		Standard - Large				null x 720			Convert	
		Standard - Small				null x 352			Link	
		HQ MP4 for Export				null x 720			Import	
		Basic - Small (H264)				null x 352			Select Action	•
		Basic - Small (ISM)				null x 352			Select Action	-

Save Save & Close

Previous Entry Next Entry
 Next Entry

#### Metadata Error

#### **To correct metadata:**



**NOTE:** If you click "Go to Metadata Tab" in the error description, skip to step 4.

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. In the Entries Table, click the name of the entry that has a metadata error.
- 3. In the Edit Entry window, go to the Metadata tab or the Custom Data tab.
- 4. Modify the information in the metadata field specified in the error description, and click Save and Close.

If the submission status error is still displayed in the Edit Entry window's Distribution tab: go back to the Edit Entry window, and select the Custom Data tab.

5. Add the missing information specified in the error description, and click Save and Close.

#### **Missing Thumbnail Error**

#### To add a thumbnail



**NOTE:** If you click "Go to Thumbnails Tab" in the error description, skip to step 4.

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. In the Entries Table, click the name of the entry that is missing a thumbnail.
- 3. In the Edit Entry window, go to the Thumbnails tab.
- 4. Click Add Thumbnail and select Grab from Video.

dit Entry - World	l News (01.04.10)	_		_	_	0
Metadata	Add Thumbnail 🗸 🗸					
Thumbnails	Upload	D mensions	Size (KB)	Distributors	Status	Action
Access Control Scheduling	Grab from Video New Crop	480 X 270	-	YouTube	-	✓ Set as Default
Flavors						💥 Delete
Mixes						
Custom Data						
Distribution						

- 5. If you have a thumbnail file, select Upload, specify the file location and name, and click Open.
- **6.** Play the video, pause on the frame you want, and click the thumbnail capture button (camera). A thumbnail will be captured from the highest quality video flavor.



7. Exit to return to the Thumbnails window.

### To modify the thumbnail dimensions

- 1. In the Edit Entry window, click Add Thumbnail and select New Crop.
- **2.** Select the Thumbnail to modify.
- **3.** Check the Lock aspect ratio and scale to option and select the values specified in the error description.
- 4. Adjust the display area with the handles on the image.
- 5. Click Generate Thumbnail, and exit to return to the Thumbnails window.

Edit Entry - kisses_NEW - Create Thumb	C
Choose Thumbnall       Position and Size       Lock aspect ratio and scale to:       Select valid dimensions       Select valid dimensions       Position       Left       Top       139       Crop       Width       156       Height       160	
	Generate Thumbnail

6. Click Save Changes to complete the process.

### Removing a Distributor from a Video Package

You may want to change your distribution destinations for video packages.

#### To remove a distributor from a video package

- 1. Go to the Content tab and select the Entries tab.
- 2. In the Entries Table, click the name of the entry with a distributor that you want to remove.
- 3. In the "Edit Entry" window, go to the "Distribution" tab and click "Add / Remove Distributors".

Edit Entry - World News (12.30.10)					?
Metadata					Add / Remove Distributors
Thumbnails	Distributor	Start Date	End Date	Submission Status	Action Available
Access Control	YouTube	04/11/2011	04/18/2011	Missing Thumbnail	
Scheduling				-	

**4.** In the "Add / Remove Distributors" window, clear a distributor checkbox. To clear all items in a column, click "None" at the top of the column.

Add / Remove Distr	ibutors		8
Distributors			
	tributed automatically wh	d the entry to, and check the box o en ready. Alternatively, you can m	
Distributor	All / None	Distribute Automatically	All / None
YouTube		$[ \forall ]$	

- 5. Click Apply to save your changes and return to the Distribution tab.
- 6. Click Save Changes to complete the process.

### **Managing Distributor Details**

- To manage an entry's distributor details
- Click the distributor's name on the "Distribution" tab. In the "Distribution Details" window, you can see the distributor's distribution details (status, remote ID and schedule), the entry's metadata details, the available thumbnails and the video flavors.
- **2.** In the "Distribution Details" section:
  - a. To fix an error, click the error name to display an error description and follow the instructions.
  - b. To schedule when an entry is available at the distributor, set the start and end dates and times, and click "Save".

You can set scheduling separately for each distribution so that the same content may have a different schedule depending on the distributor.

- In the "Thumbnails" section, Thumbnails are matched to the distribution point's required thumbnail size. If you have multiple thumbnails of the same size, click "Swap" to manually select the one you want.
- 4. In the "Video Flavors" section, to preview the entry in a specific flavor, click "Preview" and play the entry in the "Flavor Preview" window.

# **The Syndication Tab**

Details on how to syndicate your content to specific destinations are included here.

## **Content Syndication**

Content syndication is a way of making your content available to multiple other sources. This creates a form of leverage that gives you the ability to create your content once while maximizing your exposure on

the Internet by distributing your content in many places at the same time. Content syndication is a win-win for both the publisher and the webmaster. As a result of this type of distribution, publishers receive increasingly more exposure for their content and webmasters receive new source for additional content.

Kaltura allows you to create video feeds in multiple formats that are ready for submission to 3<sup>rd</sup> party platforms such as Google, Yahoo!, iTunes and other video sharing sites and social networks. Videos are distributed via playlist feeds (such as MRSS) to the channels of your choice. The content remains on the Kaltura host.

RSS syndicates your web content to other sites and builds inbound links, making RSS one of the most effective SEO strategies today. Using RSS as part of your SEO strategy is advantageous. If you need help with web content syndication, contact your account manager.

Syndicating to Google in the KMC is used mainly to create video site maps to submit into Google search engines for indexing.

iTunes syndication in the KMC is used to show content in iTunes and to create a feed for iTunes.

## **How Does Syndication Work?**

Kaltura provides syndication to the following out of the box formats:

- Google
- Yahoo
- iTunes
- TubeMogul

Partners and developers can also syndicate content in Flexible Feed Format, or you can contact Professional Services to create a customize feed in XSLT or XML. See Flexible Feed Format.

Kaltura's MRSS Feeds and Syndication services allow publishers to syndicate and track their videos on a wide range of video sharing sites and social networks via playlist feeds managed through the Kaltura Management Console. Publishers can then track their videos and tweak their programs and campaigns based on the results.

Publishers can set up MRSS feeds into major video search engines including Google, Yahoo! and iTunes from within the KMC. You can create a feed based on all of the content in your KMC account, or a subset of the content that is determined by a specific playlist see the Playlists Tab. You can then add the selected content to a feed by selecting its destination site. The content of a playlist can change, for example a rule-based playlist can be modified by changing a rule, or a manually created playlist may be modified by manually adding content to the playlist. The feed will automatically change according to the modifications. Feeds are cached in the Kaltura server for 24 hours. The feed refresh is automatic, and the changes are available after that time.

You can shorten the caching time by limiting the feed size.

### To shorten the caching time for a syndication feed

• Manually add the parameter (&limit=50) to the feed URL.

Adding this parameter will limit the feed size to up to 50 items and will reduce the caching time to 30 minutes

### Syndicating to a Standard MRSS Feed (Yahoo)

Yahoo is the standard MRSS feed type which can be used by any MRSS reader for various use cases. Yahoo also uses the standard MRSS feed to submit site maps. For example, if you create an MRSS, you can place the link in your site and allow end users to subscribe to the feed, or use the feed for your own integration. You can create your own video galleries that refresh when you update the feed, as well as integrate the feed to your site, and extract data from the feed to display the content, depending on fields you define. There are many clients (for example all browsers), and desktop applications, and site integrations that know how to read MRSS feeds.

## Search Engine Optimization (SEO)

Submitting feeds to major search engines helps to increase your content's SEO, and ultimately direct more traffic to your website. See Maximizing Video SEO With Kaltura.

## **Key benefits**

- Setting up a new feed is simple and quick easily set-up multiple playlists in the KMC to be distributed, videos within each playlist are automatically distributed to the relevant channels on the video sharing sites.
- Automatic updates after a one-time set-up, any additional videos that are added to the selected playlist will automatically be syndicated accordingly based on the feed's specific configuration. There is no need for manual updates to the feed.

## **Setting Up Syndication**

To configure syndication settings

1. Go to the Content tab and select the Syndicate tab.

¢ ا	Kaltura Dashboard Content Studio Analytics Settings Administration Up Atar Shadmi (Logout.)   Account. Katur (Change Account.)   User Manual   Support					
Er	tries Mod	leration Playlists Syndicati	on Categories		Upload	Control Drop Folders 🥐
Syndication Feeds Here you can maximize your content's reach and generate traffic back to your site via external syndication. Through Katura's integration with multiple distribution partners, you can distribute and track your videos on a wide range of search engines, video sharing sites and social networks.						
	ID	Name	Туре	Content	Feed URL	
	0_1o5lip64	vv	Google		http://devtests.kaitura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedId=0_1o5llp64	Create New Feed
	0_o6tuv84n	test save player - google	Google	Only From Playlist: playlist with same entry twice	http://devtests.kaltura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedId=0_o6tuv84n	create new reed
	0_mecwznke	ppp	Yahoo		http://devtests.kaltura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedId=0_mecwznke	
	0_zjwk559x	pupuk	Google		http://devtests.kaltura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedid=0_zjwk559x	
	0_37j9sftc	8888	Google		http://devtests.kaltura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedId=0_37j9sftc	
	0_rp6yge1g	new feed	Tunes		http://devtests.kaltura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerld=346151&feedld=0_rp6yge1g	
	0_0qyihzdz	feed10	Google		http://devtests.kaltura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedId=0_0qyihzdz	
	0_4ox32fd4	feed9	Google		http://devtests.kaitura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedid=0_4ox32fd4	
	0_h5ayojb3	feed8	Google		http://devtests.kaltura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerld=346151&feedId=0_h5ayojb3	
	0_4pbvk63p	feed7	Google		http://devtests.kaitura.co.cc/api_v3/getFeed.php?partnerid=346151&feedid=0_4pbvk63p	
Del	ete	1		1 2 Next 1-10 of 17	Show rows: 10 🗸	

- 2. Click Create New Feed.
- 3. Enter the Feed Name (required).
- 4. Select the content to syndicate.
  - All Content syndicates all entries.
  - Only content from this playlist syndicates content from the playlist you select.
- 5. Select the Feed Type.

Add Video Feed	e	98	
*Feed Name:			
Select Content:	All Content		
	<ul> <li>Only content from this playlist</li> </ul>		
	test_manual	~	
Feed Type:	Google	ĸ	
Google Parameters:	Google	-13-	
	Yahoo!		
Content Flavor:	ITunes		
	TubeMogul		
*Landing Page:	Flexible Format Feed		
Enter the URL template that you would like to appear in the Google search results for each video in this feed. The sys will append the specific entry id for each entry. For example: "http://mysite.com?videoid="			
Playback directly from Google?:  Over the player:			
	Dark player	~	
	This player will appear within the Google search results page		
	<ul> <li>No, only linkback to my site</li> </ul>		
Adult Content:	This feed includes adult content		
	Add Feed		

## Syndicating to Google

You can submit your videos to the Google search engine which will ultimately direct more traffic from Google to your website. Submission of video feeds to Google is free of charge, yet requires some technical knowledge. It is recommended that your website's webmaster be available for assistance. Google syndication is used mainly for submitting your site map and being certain that your media is indexed by Google.

The workflow for setting up Google syndication is divided into two tasks:

- Google Webmaster tasks
- KMC Publisher tasks

### **Google Webmaster Tasks**

**To configure syndication settings for Google** 

4

- 1. Setup a Google Webmaster account for your website.
- 2. Setup your website in the Google Webmaster Tool.
  - Follow the directions here. Make sure your site is valid based on the Google instructions.
- 3. Submit the Feed to a URL.

Create a server page on your website that redirects to this feed URL. For example, for a php implementation, save a php file named redirect.php with the following content (replace the XXXX with your feed URL):

```
<?php
Header( "HTTP/1.1 301 Moved Permanently" );
Header( "Location : XXXX");
?>
```

- 4. Login to the Google Webmaster Tool.
- 5. In the Google Webmaster Tool, go to Site configuration > Sitemaps > Submit a sitemap.
- 6. Submit the feed as your redirect page in your site, for example: http://mysite.com/redirect.php.

### **KMC** Publisher Tasks for Google Syndication

- To configure syndication settings for Google
- 1. Configure the Syndication Settings. See Setting Up Syndication.
- **2.** Select Google from the Feed Type drop-down menu. The Google parameters are displayed.
- 3. Enter the Google Parameters, see Google: Feed Parameters and click Add Feed.

Add Video Feed	© 8				
*Feed Name:	New Feed 2010				
Select Content:	All Content				
	<ul> <li>Only content from this playlist</li> </ul>				
	My new playlist 3				
Feed Type:	Google				
Google Parameters:					
Content Flavor:	Source 💌 🐨 Add to default transcoding profile				
*Landing Page:	http://www.news24.us				
Enter the URL template that you would like to appear in the Google search results for each video in this feed. The system will append the specific entry id for each entry. For example: "http://mysite.com?videoid="					
Playback directly from Google?:	Yes and use this video player:				
	Player with black hover controls				
	This player will appear within the Google search results page				
	No, only linkback to my site				
Adult Content:	This feed includes adult content				
Google videos tennis	Add Feed				
•					
Videos     > eurosport.fr     ● Show options     Result of about 94:       Ymail     SafeSearch is on (Google Default)     SafeSearch is on (Google Default)       14 days ago video.eurosport.fr     Link goes to landing page, with entry id appended					
Fennis - Serena "pète les plombs"         I 3 months ago         Serena Williams n'y a pas été de main morte avec la juge de ligne lors de sa demi-finale face à Kim Clijsters. L'Américaine l'aurait même menacé de mort selon les médias outre video.eurosport.fr         Playvideo         Image: Playvideo <tr< th=""></tr<>					
	ians sa quete aux demi-finales des Masters de Doha en abandonnant a 4-6, 7-6, 4-1. La Bélarusse de 20 ans servait pourtant				


#### **Google: Feed Parameters**

Field	Description
Content Flavor	The format and quality of the content to be syndicated
Landing page	The URL template that you would like to appear in the Google search results for each video in this feed. The system will append the specific entry ID for each entry. See feed example below.
Add to default transcoding profile	Check to add the chosen Content flavor to content that will be uploaded subsequently, using the default transcoding profile
Playback directly from Google -	Select if you prefer for Google to display a link to your website only or if you'd like Google to display the actual video directly within the search results page (see screenshot below). If you allow Google to playback the videos directly from the search results page, you can select the player that will be used for playback. The player may include your branding, watermark, etc.
Adult content	If selected, videos in this feed should be available only to users with SafeSearch turned off.

### Syndicating to TubeMogul

Kaltura and TubeMogul have partnered to provide a premium syndication service at the most attractive pricing available.

This service allows you to seamlessly syndicate your content to over 20 video portals including YouTube, Daily Motion, Metacafe, etc. and to receive aggregated analytics across video portals.

Each time you add a video to your syndicated content, it will be automatically distributed to your channel in the video portal you selected.

To learn more about this feature and pricing information contact us or call +1-800-871-5224.

### KMC Publisher Tasks for TubeMogul Syndication

To configure syndication settings for TubeMogul

- 1. Configure the Syndication Settings. See Setting Up Syndication.
- **2.** Select TubeMogul from the Feed Type drop-down menu. The TubeMogul parameters are displayed.
- **3.** Enter the TubeMogul Parameters, see TubeMogul: Feed Parameters and click Add Feed. The URL for the feed is generated.

Add Video Feed	•	28					
*Feed Name:	Tube_Mogul Feed						
Select Content:	All Content						
	Only content from this playlist						
	test_manual	$\sim$					
Feed Type:	TubeMogul	~					
TubeMogul Parameters:							
Content Flavor:	Source   Add to default transcoding profile						
Categories:	Animals & Pets	~					
	These categories will be use when pushing your content to the various sharing websites	9					
	WEDSILES						
	Add Feed						

#### **TubeMogul: Feed Parameters**

Field	Description
Content flavor	The format and quality of the content to be syndicated.
Add to default transcoding profile	Check to add the chosen Content flavor to content that will be uploaded subsequently, using the default transcoding profile.
Feed categories	These categories will be used when pushing your content to the various sharing websites

### TubeMogul Webmaster Tasks

To submit the video feed to TubeMogul

1. Copy the feed URL you obtained after you added the feed. See KMC Publisher Tasks for TubeMogul Syndication.



- 2. Login to your Kaltura–TubeMogul account.
- 3. Go to Advanced Tools, select More Tools, and then select MRSS Feed Manager.
- 4. Submit your feed.

### Syndicating to iTunes

You can submit your content to the iTunes Store as a podcast. You will need an active Apple ID and the iTunes application installed. The flavors for feeds for iTunes must either be MP4, or a flavor that is compatible with Apple iTunes.

### **KMC** Publisher Tasks for iTunes Syndication

#### To configure syndication settings for iTunes

- 1. Configure the Syndication Settings. See Setting Up Syndication.
- **2.** Select iTunes from the Feed Type drop-down menu. The iTunes parameters are displayed.
- 3. Enter the iTunes Parameters, see iTunes: Feed Parameters and click Add Feed.

his	s feed is ready	for submission	9	8
t I	he "Convert" option. f you wish to transcod	entry that you would like to transcode, go to the Flavors tab, and select e multiple entries into HQ MP4 for Export, please contact Kaltura http://corp.kaltura.com/support/form/project/13		•
pl		s feed before submitting to the iTunes Store, se steps (Note that you will need the iTunes ed):		
1.	Copy the feed URL	http://www.kaltura.com/api_v3/getFeed.php?feedId=0_eky94t82		
2.	Launch the iTunes ap	plication installed on your desktop		
3.	Inside iTunes go to "A	dvance > Subscribe to podcast" and submit the feed URL there		_
po	dcast, please fo	this feed to the iTunes Store as a podcast/ video llow these steps (Note that you will need an active Funes application installed):		
1.	Copy the feed URL	http://www.kaltura.com/api_v3/getFeed.php?feedId=0_eky94t82		
2.	Golto https://phobo	s.apple.com/WebObjects/MZFinance.woa/wa/publishPodcast		
	(launches iTunes app	lication in the right page)		
3.	Submit your feed			•

ок

#### iTunes: Feed Parameters

Field	Description
Name	Name of the feed.
Content selection	You can either select all content, or create a feed of a specific playlist only.
Content flavor	The format and quality of the content to be syndicated. iTunes supports these formats: .m4a, .mp3, .mov, .mp4, and .m4v. Refer to here for more information.
Add to Default Transcoding Profile	Check to add the chosen Content flavor to content that will be uploaded subsequently, using the default transcoding profile.
Landing page	The URL template that you would like to appear in the iTunes Store for each video in this feed. The system will append the specific entry ID for each entry. The following parameters will be presented in the iTunes store, as demonstrated in the illustration below:
	Feed Author
	Feed Landing Page (link back to your website)
	Feed Category (will direct iTunes store how to categorize your feed)

Field	Description
	Feed Description
	Feed Image URL (should be 600x600)
	In addition, the system will add the following relevant information for every entry: Name, Duration, Create date, Description.
Contact information	The name and email you enter for the feed will be used for iTunes Store to contact you if necessary. This information will not be presented in the iTunes Store.
Language	The language of the videos/ audio files in this feed.
Adult content	If you select this, an "explicit" parental advisory graphic will appear next to your podcast artwork on the iTunes Store, and in the Name column in iTunes.

This American Li	fe .				Feed Name	
	Chicago Public Radio	SEE ALL POD	CASTS		Feed Author	
This	Category: Society & Culture Language: English	WEBSITE			Feed landing page	
American	Free SUBSCIE	REPORT A CO		0	Feed Category	
Life					Freed Description	
	2	LISTENERS A		IBED TO	Feed Description	
		APM: A Prairie Home Companion's News fr NPR: Fresh Air NPR: Car Taik's Call of the Work			Entry Name (Automatically filled per entry)	
PODCAST DESCRIPT	ION	Learn Spanis	with Coffee	Break Spanish	Feed Author	
person stories and short fictio	the award-winning radio show "This American Life." First- n pieces that are touching, funny, and surprising. Hosted by				Entry Duration (Autamatically filled per entry)	
ra Glass, from WBEZ Chicago	Public Radio. In mp3 and updated Mondays.				Entry Create date (Automatically filled per entry	
A Name	Artist	Time	Release Da	Description	Entry Description (Automatically filled per entry	
#218: Act V	Chicago Public Radio	O \$9.00	(10/14/07)	Inmates at a high-see	chu y bescription (Automatically filleu per enu)	

#### To test the feed before submitting to the iTunes Store

- 1. Copy the URL you obtained after adding the feed.
- 2. Launch the iTunes application installed on your desktop.
- 3. Go to Advance > Subscribe to podcast and submit the feed URL.

#### To submit the feed to the iTunes Store as a podcast/ video podcast:

- 1. Copy the feed URL.
- 2. Go to https://phobos.apple.com/WebObjects/MZFinance.woa/wa/publishPodcast(launches iTunes application in the right page)
- 3. Submit your feed.

### Syndicating to Yahoo

Syndicating to Yahoo in the KMC is used mainly to create standard MRSS feeds. Yahoo syndication can also be used to create site maps to submit into Yahoo search engines for indexing.

### KMC Publisher Tasks for Yahoo Syndication

#### To configure syndication settings for Yahoo

- 1. Configure the Syndication Settings. See Setting Up Syndication.
- Select Yahoo from the Feed Type drop-down menu. The Yahoo parameters are displayed.
- **3.** Enter the Yahoo Parameters, see iTunes: Feed Parameters, Yahoo: Feed Parameters and click Add Feed.

Add Video Feed	•	2 8					
*Feed Name:							
reed name:	New Feed 2010						
Select Content:	All Content						
	<ul> <li>Only content from this playlist</li> </ul>						
	My new playlist 3						
Feed Type:	Yahoo!	•					
Yahoo Parameters:							
Content Flavor:	Source 🛛 🔻 🤡 Add to default transcoding profile						
*Landing Page:	http://						
	ike to appear in the Yahoo search results for each video in this feed. The I for each entry. For example: "http://mysite.com?videoid="						
Playback directly from Yahoo?:	Yes and use this video player:						
	Light player 🗸						
	This player will appear within the Yahoo search results page						
	<ul> <li>No, only linkback to my site</li> </ul>						
'Web Site:	http://						
Feed Description:							
	Add Feed						

### Yahoo Webmaster Tasks

- To submit the video feed to Yahoo
- 1. Copy the feed URL you obtained after you added the feed. See KMC Publisher Tasks for Yahoo Syndication.
- 2. Go to http://video.search.yahoo.com/mrss/submit.
- 3. Fill in the form and submit your feed as a "Full feed".

#### Yahoo: Feed Parameters

Field

Description

Field	Description
Name	Name of the feed.
Content selection -	You can either select all content, or create a feed of a specific playlist only.
Content flavor	The format and quality of the content to be syndicated
Add to Default Transcoding Profile	Check to add the chosen Content flavor to content that will be uploaded subsequently, using the default transcoding profile.
Landing page	The URL template that you would like to appear in the Yahoo search results for each video in this feed. The system will append the specific entry ID for each entry.
Playbacks directly from Yahoo	Select if you prefer for Yahoo to display a link to your website only or also if you'd like Yahoo to display the actual video directly within the search results page. If you allow Yahoo to playback directly from within the search results page, you can select the player that will be used for playback. This player may include your branding, watermark, etc.
Adult content	If selected, videos in this feed should be available only to users with SafeSearch turned off.

#### The table below maps categories between the different websites.

TubeMogul	Arts & Animat ion	Comedy	Entertain ment	Music	News & Blogs	Science & Technolo gy	Sports	Travel & Places
5min	Arts/Ot hers	People/Oth ers	Home/Ent ertaining	Music/Oth ers	Business/O thers	Tech/Other s	Sports/Oth ers	Wheels/Ot hers
Blip.tv	Art	Comedy	Movies and Television	Music and Entertainm ent	The Mainstrea m Media	Technology	Sports	Travel
Break	Animati on	Funny Videos	Entertainm ent	Entertainm ent	News Videos	Entertainm ent	Sports Videos	Entertainm ent
DailyMotion	Arts	Funny	Film & TV	Music	News & Politics	Science & Technology	Sports & Extreme	Travel
eBaums World	Arts Animati on	Comedy	Entertainm ent	Music	News Blogs	Science Tech	Sports	Travel Places
Graspr	Arts & Crafts	Other	Other	Music	Other	Computers & Internet	Sports & Recreation	Travel
GrindTV	N/A	N/A	N/A	music	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Howcast	Animati on Techniq ues	Humor & Comedy	General Performing Arts	Making Music Videos	Politics & Citizenship	General Technology	General Sports	General Travel
i2TV	Arts, Film, Animati on	Comedy	Entertainm ent	Music	News	Technology	Sports & Games	Travel & Places
Metacafe	Art & Animati on	Comedy	Entertainm ent	Music & Dance	News & Events	Science & Tech	Sports	Travel & Outdoors

TubeMogul	Arts & Animat ion	Comedy	Entertain ment	Music	News & Blogs	Science & Technolo gy	Sports	Travel & Places
MSN Video	Movies	Movies	TV	Music	News	Web	Sports	Events
MySpace	Animati on/CGI	Comedy and Humor	Entertainm ent	Music	News and Politics	Science and Technology	Sports	Travel and Vacations
Sclipo	Arts / Design	Other	Other	Music	Other	Science / Technology	Sports	Hobby / Games
StreetFire	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
StupidVideos	Just Plain Stupid: Laugh Out Loud	Just Plain Stupid: Laugh Out Loud	Just Plain Stupid: Laugh Out Loud	Just Plain Stupid: Laugh Out Loud	Just Plain Stupid: Office/Wor kplace	Just Plain Stupid: Laugh Out Loud	Sports: Other	Just Plain Stupid: Laugh Out Loud
Veoh	Animati on	Comedy	Entertainm ent	Music	News	Tech & Gaming	Sports	Travel & Culture
VideoJug	Creative & Culture	Humour & Bizarre	Entertainm ent	Music	Current Affairs	Technology & Cars	Sports & Outdoors	Travel
Yahoo	Art & Animati on	Funny	Entertainm ent	Music	News	Technology & Products	Sports & Games	Travel
YouTube	Film & Animati on	Comedy	Entertainm ent	Music	News & Politics	Science & Technology	Sports	Travel & Events

### **Flexible Feed Format**

Developers may to create custom syndication feeds. You can customize syndication feeds by creating an XSLT.

Flexible feed format allows for greater flexibility for creating syndication feeds. You can transform your feed into any format programmatically and include additional data such as custom data fields, system data fields, and other fields. For example, you may want to re-format a standard MRSS field, to move a media item's description place, or, for example, add the entry duration.

Flexible feed format allows you to determine what content goes into the feed field and the location of the field. You can change the structure and the content of the feed.

## CHAPTER 17

# **Advertising and Ad Networks**

This section contains the following topics:

- Overview of Advertising with Kaltura
- Connecting with an Ad Server
- Creating Kaltura Video Ads
- Adding the VAST Ad Server
- Configuring VAST Ads
- Creating Bumper Ads
- Configuring Third Party Ad Plugins
- Configuring Companion Ads

# **Overview of Advertising with Kaltura**

Kaltura's monetization features contain a comprehensive set of advertising tools, pay-per-view, subscription models, and built-in reports that let you optimize your strategy based on viewer behavior.

You can target viewers with ads on live videos or VOD, and across multiple devices such as mobile, PC and set-top-box. With support for a wide range of video ad formats (including all major IAB standards), and integrated plugins for video ad networks, such as Google DoubleClick DART, FreeWheel, Ad Tech, Eye Wonder, AdapTV, Tremor Video and others, managing you can optimize your monetization.

The Kaltura Player supports pre-rolls, mid-roll post-rolls, Flash companion ads and HTML companion ads. The Kaltura Player is VAST-compliant, supports custom SWFs, bumper videos, and has plugins for AdapTV, Tremor, and Eyewonder.

### **Player Branding**

Players can be designed and skinned to match any brand and used for your own brand or for advertisers on your site. See Configure the Player Features.

# **Connecting with an Ad Server**

Integrating your Ad Server with the KMC is a one-time activity performed when you initially set up video advertising. The ad server has to be VAST compliant or available as a Kaltura plugin. You may also create a custom swf for the Kaltura Player to support.

After you have selected an ad server and set up an account with that ad server, you integrate the ad server with the KMC by establishing a connection between that ad server and KMC. After the connection is established, all ad requests generated by the Kaltura Dynamic Player are in a format which the ad server expects, allowing seamless communication between the Kaltura Player and the ad server.

The Digital Video Ad Serving Template (VAST) is an industry standard for the XML response from an ad server. Most of the leading Ad Servers and Ad Networks are VAST compliant, and support IAB standard (VAST 1.0 / VAST 2.0).

Popular ad servers include DoubleClick, Dart For Publisher (DFP), Microsoft Atlas, OpenX, ScanScout.

To see the full list of servers and networks that comply with VAST, refer to the IAB website:

http://www.iab.net/iab\_products\_and\_industry\_services/508676/compliance/679253

In general, ads, tracking, scheduling, and other parameters, are configured on the ad server side. With VAST, other parameters need to be configured through the KMC or Kaltura Player. Ad parameters are configured through the Studio tab in the KMC.

### Kaltura Player and Ad Plugins

Kaltura partners have the ability to create a custom .swf file to stream ads from their own ad server to the Kaltura Player. The.swf file acts as an ad plugin. The configured key-value pairs must be defined to play the relevant ads.

You have to subscribe to an ad server and configure the ads on the ad server side.

#### **Supported Ad Servers**

All VAST compliant ad servers are supported. For more information see Kaltura's Generic Ads Player Plugin for VAST.

The Kaltura Player all VAST compliant ad servers and supports the following ad plugins:

- AdapTV
- Tremor
- Eyewonder
- DoubleClick
- FreeWheel

For more information see Configuring Third Party Ad Plugins.

### Ad Terminology

Ad tracking - the ability to define which/if ads play based on specific metadata.

**Overlay** – an ad that appears as an image (usually with text) over a video, while the video is playing.

**Companion ad**– a banner ad that accompanies the ad that plays over the video player – this can either be located in the list area of the playlist or somewhere else on the HTML page.

Ad Tag URL – a URL that is XML that contains all the information about the ad(s) that should be displayed. VAST works with an ad tag URL system. The XML needs to conform to VAST standard in order to be considered "VAST-compatible". That means that it needs to have the proper tags.

The following is an example of a VAST ad tag URL: http://ad3.liverail.com/?LR\_PUBLISHER\_ID=1331&LR\_CAMPAIGN\_ID=229&LR\_SCHEMA=vast2

To see the example, insert this URL into your browser.

Ad Cue Points – time based points on an entry that can be used to view mid- roll advertisements.

# **Creating Kaltura Video Ads**

The following is the workflow for configuring a KMC VAST compliant ad.

• Adding the VAST Ad Server

• Configuring VAST Ads

# Adding the VAST Ad Server

To add an ad server that supports the VAST standard

• Obtain an Ad tag URL from your ad server. See How to Locate the Ad Tag URL.

# **Configuring VAST Ads**

- To configure VAST Ads
- 1. Select the Studio tab and select an existing player or create a new one. See Designing and Configuring a Player. The player is configured to display VAST ads only.
- 2. Select the Advertising tab.

Edit Player - DZ_multiplaylist							
Basics							
Features	Advertising Status						
Advertising	Request ads for this player:	Yes No					
Style	Ad Source Configura	ation					
Content	Ad Source:	VAST Ad Server					
	Custom SWF URL:	http://					
	Key Value Pairs: separate with ;	key=value format					

- 3. Enable Request ads for this player.
- 4. Configure the Ad Source as VAST Ad server.

### **Configuring VAST Pre-roll Ads**

Pre-roll ads are ads that appear prior to an online video.

📃 To configure pre-roll ads		То	configure	pre-roll	ads
-----------------------------	--	----	-----------	----------	-----

- 1. Configure the Player Advertising Settings.
- 2. Click on Pre-Roll Ads.
- 3. Toggle on Request PreRoll Ads Enabled.
- 4. Paste the Ad Tag URL received from the ad server. See How to Locate the Ad Tag URL.
- 5. Select the Display options.
- 6. Display X ads assumes that there is more than one ad configured in the ad tag URL.

7. Before every X video starting with the X video assumes that there is either a playlist on the page or a gallery. This functionality works with galleries as well as playlists.

Create New Player					
	(iii coociido)				
Basics	Companion Ads in HTML Add companion div				
Features	Companion Ads in Flash Add companion element				
Advertising					
Style	Ad Timeline				
	PreRoll Ads:				
	Request PreRoll Ads				
	Ad tag URL: http://				
	Display 1 V PreRoll ad/s before every 1st V video starting with the 1st V video.				

### **Configuring VAST Post Rolls**

PostRoll ads are ads that appear after an online video.

- To configure PostRoll ads
- **1.** Configure the Player Advertising Settings.
- 2. Click on PostRoll Ads.
- 3. Toggle on Request PostRoll Ads Enabled.
- 4. Paste the Ad Tag URL received from the ad server. See How to Locate the Ad Tag URL.
- 5. Select the Display options.

Create New Playe	er
Basics	Companion Ads in HTML Add companion div
Features	Companion Ads in Flash Add companion element
Advertising	
Style	Ad Timeline
	PreRoll Ads:
	Request PostRoll Ads     Image: Enabled       Ad tag URL:     http://
	Display 1 V PostRoll ad/s after every 1st Video starting with the 1st Video.

### Adding a Midroll

Midrolls and overlays are cue points that are defined on an entry level in the player configuration section of the Studio Advertising tab.



- 1. Configure the Player Advertising Settings.
- 2. Select the Content Tab and select an entry.
- **3.** Select the Advertisements tab.

	File Actions	~			6	
humbnails	Upload from fi	e 🖓			E a	
ccess Control	Download to f					
cheduling	Туре	Select Type	Duration: 00:00	0:04.000		
lavors	Provider	Other 🗸				
ustom Data		Enter ad provider				
istribution	URL					
	Name			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	00:5	14
aptions	00,00	09:00	18:00	27:00 36:00	45:00	
dvertisements	_					
elated Files						
olatou r noo						
		+ 💼 🔳				
					Remove all o	cue po

- 4. Select the method to obtain the midroll add from the File Actions drop down menu.
- 5. Choose the granularity level for the time-based display. The choices are:
- 100%
- 5 sec
- 1 sec
- Frames.



6. Identify the exact scene or frame to display the advertisement and insert a cue.

This can b	e done on the time	eline:				
00:00	07:500	15:00	22:500	36,00	37:500	
		· · · · · ·		·		
		合				

7. To edit a cue point, select whether the advertisement will be a video or an overlay.

- a. For a video the entry will stop playing, the ad will play, and then the entry will resume.
- For an overlay while the entry is playing, a banner will appear on the screen. The entry never stops playing.
- 8. For both video and overlay, there are 2 options in the provider section: VAST and OTHER. VAST allows a user to insert a VAST ad tag URL. OTHER is for customers who have created a custom plugin that allows for creating cue points Other, does NOT refer to existing ad plugins such as Tremor, Adap.tv, etc.
- 9. If you select overlay, the display time will be indicated next to the Overlay option:

Type Overlay • 00:00:04.000
-----------------------------

You can modify the amount of time you want the overlay to appear on the video using the up and down arrows.

**10.** To apply the selected cue points to the player, create a new player or edit an existing one under the "Studio" tab. Within the advertisement portion of the player, make sure that the "Request Ads From Entry's Cue points" is set to "Yes".

### Adding an Overlay

An overlay ad is an ad banner that is displayed over the video.

#### To add an overlay at the entry level

- **1.** Configure the Player Advertising Settings.
- 2. Select the Content Tab and select an entry.
- 3. Select the Advertisements tab.
- 4. Click on the + icon to add an overlay.
- 5. Select the method to obtain the overlay add from the File Actions drop down menu.
- 6. (Required) Select the Ad Type (video/overlay).

For Video the Duration is the length of the video and the field will be greyed out. For Overlay – enter the amount of time to display in the Duration field.

- 7. Enter the provider name: VAST or Other and optional values.
- 8. For VAST enter the Tag URL and a descriptive name for the Midroll or Overlay, For other providers enter values that you want to pass to the player.
- 9. Click Save.
- To configure an overlay on the player level
- **1.** Configure the Player Advertising Settings.

Within the advertisement portion of the player, make sure that the "Request Ads From Entry's Cue points" is set to "Yes".

- 2. Click on Ads.
- 3. Toggle on Request Overlay Ads Enabled.
- 4. Paste the Ad Tag URL received from the ad server. See How to Locate the Ad Tag URL.
- 5. Select the Display options.

0	Create New Player					
	Basics	Companion Ads in HTML	Add companion div			
	Features	Companion Ads in Flash	Add companion element			
	Advertising					
	Style	Ad Timeline				
			Numper Video:			
		Request Overlay Ads	Enabled Disabled			
		Ad tag URL:	http://			
		First overlay request after	02:00 (minutes:seconds)			
		Following overlay ads after every	03:00 (minutes:seconds)			
		Display overlay ad for	00:05 (minutes:seconds)			

# **Creating Bumper Ads**

Bumpers are videos that act as ads and do not use an ad server. Bumper videos uploaded to Kaltura can be inserted before or after a video, to function as pre-rolls or post-rolls. Bumper videos are associated with a player, and are not associated with a specific video. Bumper videos are independent of actual pre/post-rolls and can be played in addition to ads. Bumper videos are helpful for Kaltura partners that would like to advertise their logo, or other information, before or after a video, and for smaller partners that would like to advertise, but do not expect to monetize from their ads.

Bumper videos can be configured in addition to any other ads that are configured. On the bottom of the Advertising tab, the option to add bumper videos only is available.

#### To configure a Bumper ads

- 1. Go to the Studio tab and select or create a player.
- 2. Select the Advertising tab.
- 3. In the Ad Timeline section, click on Bumper Video.
- 4. Toggle on Bumper Video Enabled.
- 5. Paste the Kaltura Entry ID that will be used as the bumper.
- 6. Enter the URL in the Click URL field.

t Player - dz			
Basics	JNP I BAL	skip ao >	
Features	Timeout Configuration: (in seconds)	4	
	Companion Ads in HTML	Div ID: Dimensions: 0 × 0 % Remove	
Advertising		Add companion div	
Style	Companion Ads in Flash	Element ID: Controls V Dimensions: 0 X 0 X Remove	
		Add companion element	
	Ad Timeline		
		Bumper Video:	
	PreRoll Ads:	Bumper Video:  Ads: PostRoll Ads:	
	Bumper Video:	Enabled Disabled	
	Entry ID:	1_a26tkgn	
	Click URL:	http://mysite.com/landing_page.html	

A Kaltura partner also has the ability to enable ONLY bumper ads by choosing Bumper Only as the Ad Source:

Advertising	Request ads for this player:	Yes No	
Style	Ad Source Configurati	on	
	Ad Source:	Bumper Only	~
	Custom SWF URL:	Bumper Only	•
	Key Value Pairs:	Custom swf	
	separate with ;	Tremor	≣
		AdapTV	
		Eye Wonder	•

While in the Advertising tab, you can also configure bumper pre-rolls, and or bumper post-rolls.



- 1. Create a bumper video. See Creating Bumper Ads.
- **2.** In the Features tab on the left, select the Additional Parameters and Plugins section. Enter the following:

```
postbumper.plugin=true&postbumper.width=0&postbumper.height=0&postbumper.lock
UI=false&postbumper.playOnce=false&postbumper.path=bumperPlugin.swf&postbum
per.relativeTo=video&postbumper.position=before&postbumper.includeInLayout=
false&postbumper.preSequence=false
```

3. Click Go.

Whenever both pre-rolls and bumper videos are enabled, pre-rolls will always play before the bumper video. This is because the pre-roll is configured as, preSequence=1, and the bumper video is, preSequence=2. You can change the play order via the uiconf. Post-roll ads will always play AFTER the bumper post-rolls.

# **Configuring Third Party Ad Plugins**

This section describes how to configure third party ad plugins.

### **Tremor Media**

Tremor Media is an ad network that acts as a connector between ad companies/servers and their customers. Tremor Media connects with numerous ad sources and partners from a single control center and works with their customers to provide the appropriate ads from the appropriate ad servers.

#### To configure the Tremor Media plug in

- 1. Go to your Tremor account; define ads, scheduling, targeting, etc. on the Tremor end.
- 2. Go to the Studio tab and edit an existing player or create a new one.
- 3. Select the Advertising tab.
- 4. Enable ads for the selected player.
- 5. Select Tremor as the Ad Source.

#### Ad Source Configuration

Ad Source:	Tremor	•
Custom SWF URL:	Custom swf	•
Kay Valua Baira:	Tremor	
Key Value Pairs: separate with ;	AdapTV	
	Eye Wonder	
	VAST Ad Server	•

6. In the key=value section, enter the policy ID. Type in progId=[policy ID].



**NOTE:** TremorMedia allows users to utilize other ad sources.



The Tremor plugin is in charge of displaying specific ads, and all the configurations are done on the Tremor end.

### **Tremor Media Added Functionality**

The following lists functionality that has been added to the Tremor plugin.

Functionality	Description	Example
Passing dynamic data	By inserting specific key-value pairs in the uivars, a Kaltura partner can	: <var key="customAd.paramKey1"</var 

Functionality	Description         define that any Kaltura metadata gets passed to TremorMedia via the TremorMedia plugin. Then, using the Tremor ad server, the partner can decide how to target ads via the metadata.         To enable this functionality, a custom ad path must be inserted into the uiconf.	<pre>Example value="duration" /&gt; <var key="customAd.paramValue1" value="{mediaProxy.entry.dura tion}"></var> <var key="customAd.paramKey2" value="entryId"></var> <var key="customAd.paramValue2" value="{mediaProxy.entry.id}"></var> <var key="customAd.paramKey3" value="categories"></var> <var key="customAd.paramValue3" value="{mediaProxy.entry.cate gories}"></var> <var key="customAd.paramKey4" value="ContentRating"></var> <var key="customAd.paramValue4" value="{mediaProxy.entryMetad ata.ContentRating}"></var> <var key="requiredMetadataFields" value="true"></var> Note: The Content Rating custom data field, has a slightly different value from the rest of the metadata.</pre>
Internal companion ads	The ability to insert a companion ad directly on the list part of the playlist.	
	The companion ad must be inserted as a custom ad path via the uiconf or via Additional Parameters and Plugins.	
Capping ads	A Kaltura partner can cap ads via the KMC based on the creation date.	
	To configure the Tremor plugin with the startDateOffset, with the parameter key maxAge, add the following 2 attributes to the XML (if the file is maintained manually):	
	<pre>paramKey1="duration" paramValue1="{tremor.create dAtOffset}"</pre>	
	or the equivalent uivars/flashvars line	
	<pre>paramKey1=duration&amp;paramVal ue1={tremor.createdAtOffset }</pre>	
	This is based on the assumption that the Tremor xml node has the id set to 'tremor'. If using a studio player the id would be 'customAd'.	

## AdapTV

AdapTV has two different models – the standard model and the marketplace. The standard model allows Kaltura partners to define their own ads. The marketplace provides the customer the ability to connect with all sorts of ad companies to choose the most fitting ads.



- 1. Go to your AdapTV account; define ads, scheduling, targeting, and other parameters, on the AdapTV end.
- 2. Go to the Studio tab and edit an existing player or create a new one.
- 3. Select the Advertising tab.
- **4.** Enable ads for the selected player.
- 5. Select AdapTV as the Ad Source.

Edit Player - Deb	bie´s_test_player_vertical	
Basics Features	Advertising Status	
Advertising	Request ads for this player:	Yes No
Style	Ad Source Configuration	n
	Ad Source:	AdapTV 🗸
	Custom SWF URL:	adaptvPlugin.swf
	Key Value Pairs: separate with ;	key=value format

6. Enter the Custom SWF URL.

The Kaltura partner administrator should contact their ad server company to obtain the SWF URL and the proper Key-Value Pairs to insert.

- 7. In the key-value section insert key=[your AdapTV key]. In AdapTV, many users utilize the zone to differentiate between different ads. In this case, the customer needs to insert zone=[zone name] in the key-value section as well.
- 8. To utilize the latest AdapTV plugin (the current out-of-the-box plugin is utilizing AdapTV's legacy integration of AS2, the new plugin utilizes AS3 integration): in the Additional Parameters and Plugins section of the player, insert key=customAd.path value= http://cdnbakmi.kaltura.com/flash/kdp3/v3.5.7.6/plugins/adaptvas3Plugin.swf

Basics	Select Features from List:
Features	Select reatures from List.
Advertising	Controls
	Viral & Distribution
Style	UGC & User Interaction
	Subtitles & Transcriptions
	Custom Buttons*
	Additional parameters and plugins
	Add additional parameters to your player Paste your plug-in line here: go
	Key-value table:
	Add Remove Delete all
	customAd.path http://cdnbakmi.kaltura.com/flash/kdp3/v3.5.7.6/p verride flashvar of the same name

# **Configuring Companion Ads**

Companion Ads are "text, display ads, rich media, or skins that wrap around the video experience, and can run alongside either or both the video or ad content. The primary purpose of the Companion Ad product is to offer sustained visibility of the sponsor throughout the video content experience." See <a href="http://www.iab.net/wiki/index.php/Companion\_Ad">http://www.iab.net/wiki/index.php/Companion\_Ad</a>

#### VAST

Kaltura's platform makes it easy to add Companion Ads in either HTML or Flash. After you've configured your player (see <u>Designing and Configuring a New Player or Playlist</u>), edit the player and navigate to the Advertising tab. Scroll down to the "Player Configuration" section

Choose whether to configure HTML or Flash-based Companion Ads.

E	dit Player - Dark	Player	
	Basics		
	Features	Player Configuration	
	Advertising	Request ads from entry's cuepoints:	🔿 Yes 💿 No
	Style	Show Notice Text:	
		Notice Text:	Video will start in {sequenceProxy.timeRemaining} seconds
		Allow Skip :	
		Skip Text:	skip ad >
		Timeout Configuration: (in seconds)	4
		Companion Ads in HTML	Add companion div
		Companion Ads in Flash	Add companion element

#### **Companion Ads in HTML**

- **To add companion ads in HTML**
- 1. Click on the "Add companion div" text in the "Player Configuration" section. Entry fields to enter the CSS "id" of your companion ad and the dimensions in pixels appear.
- 2. Enter the CSS div id and dimensions (in pixels) for each ad region. Be certain to enter the dimensions to match the dimensions of your served ads.
- 3. Click on the "Add companion div" text multiple times to enter more ad regions.

Edit Player - Dark	Player	
Basics		
Features	Player Configuration	
Advertising	Request ads from entry's cuepoints:	🔿 Yes 💿 No
Style	Show Notice Text:	Yes No
	Notice Text:	Video will start in {sequenceProxy.timeRemaining} seconds
	Allow Skip :	Yes No
	Skip Text:	skip ad >
	Timeout Configuration: (in seconds)	4
	Companion Ads in HTML	Div ID: myCompanionAd Dimensions: 234 x 60 <b>X</b> Remove
	Companion Ads in Flash	Add companion element

In the web page where your Companion Ads will display, you need to include a JavaScript file as well as a corresponding HTML <div> tag with a matching id for each region you create.

```
<html>
<body>
<head>
... .
<script src="http://www.kaltura.com/javascript/VAST/companionAdFunc.js" type=</pre>
   "text/javascript"></script>
.... .
</head>
<body>
.....
<object id="kaltura_player" name="kaltura_player" type="application/x-shockwave-</pre>
  flash" ..... </object>
<div style= "width: 234px; height: 60px;" id="myCompanionAd">
</div>
.....
</body>
</html>
```

#### **Companion Ads in Flash**

#### To add companion ads in Flash

1. Click on the "Add companion div" text in the "Player Configuration" section. You'll get entry fields to enter the CSS "id" of your companion ad and the dimensions in pixels. Be certain to enter the dimensions to match the dimensions of your served ads.

Click on the "Add companion div" text multiple times to enter more ad regions:

Edit Player -	Dark Player	
Basics		
Features	Player Configuration	
Advertising	Request ads from entry's cuepoints:	
Style	Show Notice Text:	Yes No
	Notice Text:	Video will start in {sequenceProxy.timeRemaining} seconds
	Allow Skip :	
	Skip Text:	skip ad >
	Timeout Configuration: (in seconds)	4
	Companion Ads in HTML	Add companion div
	Companion Ads in Flash	Element ID: Controls V Dimensions: 234 X 60 K Remove
		Add companion element

There are either two or three possibilities for the "Element ID" pulldown menu. If you created a Kaltura Playlist Player, you will see three options:

Companion Ads in Flash	Element ID:	Controls	•	Dimensions:	0	x	0	3 Remove
	Add compar	Controls						
		Playlist						
		Custom						

If you created a regular (non-Playlist) Player, you will see two options:

Companion Ads in Flash	Element ID:	Controls 🗸	Dimensions:	0	x	0	3 Remove
	Add compar	Controls					
		Custom					
			-				

The "Custom" option is not available. If your companion ad will appear in the regular player window above the player controls, then select "Controls". If your ad will overlay the Playlist, then select "Playlist". Enter the dimensions of your ad (in pixels) in the "Dimensions" text fields.

#### Example

Here's a Kaltura Playlist Player in a horizontal configuration:



In the following example, the same player plays a preroll ad in the main player area while a Flash Companion Ad is displayed in the playlist area:



#### Tremor

#### To configure companion ads with Tremor Media.

The companion ad needs to be enabled on the Tremor end. Perform the following steps.

1. Add the following script to your page:

```
<!-- script type="text/javascript"
   src="http://cdna.tremormedia.com/acudeo/banners.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript">
   function displayCompanionBanners(banners) {
      tmDisplayBanner(banners, "adCompanionBanner", 300, 250);
      }
   function hideCompanionBanners(banners) {
      tmHideBanner("adCompanionBanner")
      }; </script -->
```

2. Add the following script import:

<script type="text/javascript"
src="http://cdna.tremormedia.com/acudeo/banners.js"></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></script></scr

3. Add this div that will act as the ad.

```
<div id="adCompanionBanner300x250"></div>
```

#### AdapTV

#### To configure companion ads

1. Add this code to the Additional Parameters and Plugins.

```
key: adaptv.companionId
value: companiondiv
```

2. Add a div with a matching id in the HTML that holds the following player:

```
<div id="companiondiv" style="width: 300px; height: 250px;">
</div></div>
```

**Custom SWF** 

The Kaltura partner should contact their ad server in order to understand what JavaScript code needs to be implemented on their page in order to enable companion ads.

#### Targeting with an Ad Server

While ads targeting is performed within the ad server, Kaltura's VAST advertising module is designed to pass all the relevant targeting information to the ad server.

Targeting information can be set in several levels:

- Targeting per player and ad slot you can add additional key value pairs within the adtag URL. The ad server will use these for targeting.
- Targeting per content item The Kaltura VAST module supports dynamic pulling of metadata from the content item, and passes it to the ad server. For example for targeting a specific content category.

	То	target	information	
--	----	--------	-------------	--

1. Drag content items into the category within the KMC.



 Define the additional parameter in your ad server. For example, in OpenX set the "category" parameter through "Site - Variable"

🗣 Add	delivery limitation:	Site - Variable		Add
	Delivery Limitatio	ns		
	Only display thi	s banner when:		
		🆓 Site - Variable	is equal	to 💌
			Name:	category
			Value:	Trailers

3. Add category template category={mediaProxy.entry.categories} into the AdTag URL. At runtime this template will be populated with the actual values for each video played.

PreRoll Ads:	Bumper Video:     Video Content       Overlay Ads:     PostRoll Ads:
Request PreRoll Ads	Enabled O Disabled
Ad tag URL:	c.php?zones=pre-roll=150750%20 <mark>&amp;category={mediaProxy.entry.categories}8</mark> scr
Display 1 💌	PreRoll ad/s after every <b>1st ▼</b> video starting with the <b>1st ▼</b> video.

The following targeting templates are available for targeting category={mediaProxy.entry.categories} tags={mediaProxy.entry.tags} name={mediaProxy.entry.name} id={mediaProxy.entry.id}

### **Targeting per Viewer**

In some cases targeting information is not defined per content item, but per viewer.

To support these cases the Kaltura VAST module dynamically pulls metadata from the website via flashvars passed to the player.

For example targeting per a specific age group. This example assumes that the hosting site has a user database and would like to further target known users.

#### To target per viewer

1. Pass the variable (for example, viewer age) from your internal DB to the player via Flashvar.



2. Define the additional parameter in your ad server. For example in OpenX, set the "viewerAge" parameter through "Site - Variable"

🗣 Add	delivery limitation:	Site - Variable		Mdd
	Delivery Limitatio	ons		
	Only display th	is banner when:		
		🔏 Site - Variable	is greate	er than 💌
			Name:	viewerAge
			Value:	20

3. Add the flashvar template into the AdTag URL, this template will be populated in runtime with the actual values.

The template is FLASHVAR\_NAME={configProxy.flashvars.FLASHVAR\_NAME }and in the viewerAge example it would be:

viewerAge={configProxy.flashvars.viewerAge}

### Ad Targeting via ad plugin

Each ad plugin individually defines which metadata the Kaltura Player passes to the plugin. Generally, it is very basic metadata such as entry ID. Additional metadata enables the Kaltura user to target ads with that specific metadata.

#### Ad Targeting with Tremor

#### Passing dynamic data

By inserting specific key-value pairs in the uivars, a Kaltura partner can define that any Kaltura metadata gets passed to Tremor via the Tremor plugin. Then, through the Tremor ad server, the partner can decide how to target ads via the metadata.

#### **Examples:**

```
<var key="customAd.paramKey1" value="duration" />
<var key="customAd.paramValue1" value="{mediaProxy.entry.duration}" />
<var key="customAd.paramKey2" value="entryId" />
<var key="customAd.paramValue2" value="{mediaProxy.entry.id}" />
<var key="customAd.paramKey3" value="categories" />
<var key="customAd.paramValue3" value="{mediaProxy.entry.categories}" />
```

```
<var key="customAd.paramKey4" value="ContentRating" />
<var key="customAd.paramValue4" value="{mediaProxy.entryMetadata.ContentRating}" />
<var key="requiredMetadataFields" value="true" />
```

Note that ContentRating, which is a custom data field, has a slightly different value from the rest of the metadata.

To enable the custom data field, you must insert a custom ad path into the uiconf.

### **Advertising for Mobile Devices**

The advertising settings applied to your player will also apply for mobile delivery. Visit the advertising section for more information on advertising. As a general rule, VAST ads fully support ads in mobile. However, the ads will only play in a mobile device if the ad has the proper mobile flavors.

The following table summarizes current advertising support for mobile:
--

Device	Supported Ad type	Notes & Limitations			
iPhone	VAST Pre-roll	Ads are played back in the native player			
	Bumper video VAST Post-roll	Player controls are not disabled during playback (user can skip the ads)			
		Ads are not clickable			
		Ads must be encoded for the iPhone (H264)			
iPad	VAST Pre-roll Bumper video VAST Overlay VAST Post-roll	Ads must be encoded for the iPad (H264)			
Android (ver 2.2 and up)	All	Android from version 2.2 supports Flash playback with all ads integration as in Flash player.			

How to Locate the Ad Tag URL

#### DFP

In DFP there is a "Tag Generator" utility in the dashboard to generate the ad tag url. The ad tag url (http://ad.doubleclick.net/pfadx/mysite.com/.) is at the bottom of the widget.

▼ Tag Gener Site	
Zone	Please select a site.
Size	1x1       5x5       110x110       300x250       Hold down the CTRL key to make multiple selections.
More settings	□Interstitial □SSL □Key-Value □Keyword □Tiling
	Generate Tag

### **OpenX**

In OpenX the adtag URL is linked to an OpenX Zone, in the following format:

```
http://[OPENX_INSTALL]/fc.php?script=bannerTypeHtml:vastInlineBannerTypeHtml:vastI
nlineHtml&source=&format=vast&charset=UTF_8&nz=1&zones=z1=[ZONE_ID]
for openX hosted, the URL is dl.openX.org. ,
from within your OpenX account you can retrieve the zone Id.
for example for zone id 150750 in openX hosted the ad tag url would be:
http://dl.openx.org/fc.php?script=bannerTypeHtml:vastInlineBannerTypeHtml:vastInli
neHtml&source=&format=vast&charset=UTF_8&nz=1&zones=z1=150750
```

### AdapTV (via VAST)

Copy the "Specific Ad Tag" from the Ad screen

#### Configuring Companion Ads

Cre	eate/Edit Ad		×
0	Name Ariel Test	Name	Ariel Test
0	<b>Display</b> VAST Video	ID	7796
0	Delivery & Pricing Live	Description	
0	View Targeting Zone	Specific Ad Tag	nttp://u- ads.adap.tv/a/u/l0nlacdECbg6bR8gVjcXLMsjmV9TQvY6?cb=[CACHE_BREAKEP
<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	Spot Targeting 2 ad spot(s)	Ad Labels (	
			Save and View Forecast Save Cancel

#### Connecting with Ad Servers and Networks via adap.tv

To add adap.tv's service to your Kaltura players

- 1. Sign up with adapt.tv (Contact us to learn more) you will then receive an adapt.tv Partner Key.
- 2. Go to the Studio tab and edit an existing player or create a new one
- **3.** Go to the Advertising section
- 4. Enable ads for this player
- Select adapTV from the "Ad Source" drop down Enter your adapt.tv Partner Key in "Key Value Pairs" section, in the following format "key=[YOUR ADAPTV KEY]"

Create New	Create New Player							
Basics								
Features	Advertising Status							
Advertising	Advertising Request ads for this player: <ul> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>							
Style	Ad Source Configuration							
	Ad Source:	AdapTV						
	Custom SWF URL:	adaptvPlugin.swf						
	Key Value Pairs: separate with ;	key=[YOUR ADAPTV KEY]						

- **6.** Target, manage and customize your ads via the adap.tv console.
- 7. Via adapt.tv you can also connect to additional ad servers & ad networks such as AdTech, Atlas, DART, OpenX, Advertising.com, ScanScout, SpotExchange, Google AFV, AdBrite, AdDynamic, AdEngage, AdFish, AdoTube and over 20 other networks and servers.

For example connecting to DART via adapt.tv would simply require pasting the Ad Tag URL that the AdTech Server supplies.

Create/Edit Connection	to Ad Server	Li Aluaur Mana i 1 Zona ja adal tart	*
Name AdTech	Ad Provider Ad Format	AdTech Helios IQ Publisher  Video (VAST) V	Î
Display Video (VAST)     Delivery & Pricing Paused	Ad Tag URL		1
View Targeting All views     Spot Targeting No ad spots	Buffer Duration (sec) Countdown Text	3 ① Video begins inSECONDSseconds	1
	Insert Skip Ad Option Skip Ad Link Text	No V (1) skip ad	
	Enable the sound button Start muted Start volume level	Yes ▼ 1 No ▼ 1 100	
	Show banner inside the Player Companion Id	No V (1)	1
		Save and View Forecast Save	Cancel

**Connecting with Tremor Media** 

#### To add Tremor Media's service to Kaltura players

- 1. Sign up with Tremor Media (Contact us to learn more) you will receive a Tremor Media Program ID.
- 2. Go to the Studio tab and edit an existing player or create a new one.
- **3.** Go to the Advertising section.
- 4. Enable ads for this player.
- 5. Select Tremor from the "Ad Source" drop down
- 6. Enter your ACUDEO Ad Policy ID as your Program ID in the "Key Value Pairs" section.

Program ID's are available in the program list and are displayed as Ad Policy IDs in the ACUDEO Console. Select "Ad Policy ID" in the "Show Ad Policies with" drop down menu. Use the following format:

progId=your ACUDEO Ad Policy ID.

Additional targeting parameters should be separated with semicolons.

Edit Player - Basi	c Player	98
Basics Features Advertising	Advertising Status Request ads for this player:	
Style	Ad Source Configuration	
	Ad Source:	
	Custom SWF URL: tremorPlugin.swf	
	Key Value Pairs: progld=your ACUDEO Ad Policy ID separate with ;	

You can specify ad sources for each ad slot within your content through the Tremor Media's ACUDEO console.

7. Target, manage and customize your ads via the Tremor Media console (Acudeo).

HOME A	D POLI	CIES	VIDEO APPLICATIONS	AD ROTATOR	REPORTING		ACC	OUNTS	
VIEW AD POLICIES	+ CRI	EATE NEW AD POLICY							
			Sh	ow Ad Policies with Ad I	Policy ID 🗸 🗸			60	
Ad Policy Name			Modified By	Date Created	Date Modified				
overlay after 15 sec		4c4c4b66e721b	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	07/25/10 10:34 AM	07/25/10 10:34 AM	H		5	
pre roll every 2nd		4c27908cb91dd	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	06/27/10 01:55 PM	06/27/10 02:38 PM	H	1	6	
<u>Atar - post, overlay</u>		4c1a21ec7d676	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	06/17/10 09:23 AM	07/25/10 10:26 AM	H		5	
Atar - mid only		4c1a1c25270b5	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	06/17/10 08:59 AM	06/17/10 09:01 AM	H	1	- G	
Atar - pre, mid, post, overlay		4c19d3ffb12d7	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	06/17/10 03:51 AM	06/17/10 03:54 AM	H	1	- Ci	
AmirN pre+mid		4b962fa654fb4	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	03/09/10 07:23 AM	03/09/10 07:23 AM	H	1	- G	
mid roll time based		4b7960f9a06e4	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	02/15/10 10:58 AM	02/15/10 10:59 AM	H	1	- Ci	
Ariel Test program		4b584e8b0181f	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	01/21/10 08:54 AM	01/21/10 10:32 AM	H	A.	- Ci	
ariel test		4b572ea432ac3	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	01/20/10 12:26 PM	01/20/10 02:03 PM	H	1	- Ci	
eran pre + post		4a530e2200a52	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	07/07/09 04:58 AM	07/07/09 04:58 AM	H	1	- G	
moran		4a51b2e101ca9	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	07/06/09 04:16 AM	07/06/09 04:16 AM	H		- Ci	
50 Percent		4a2fa1854fd5a	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	06/10/09 08:05 AM	06/10/09 08:05 AM	Ħ	A	- Ci	
pre roll timeout 8		4a12a53f457bd	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	05/19/09 08:25 AM	05/19/09 08:25 AM	H	1	- Ci	
midroll X 5		4a12a4ca7902d	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	05/19/09 08:23 AM	05/20/09 05:02 AM	H	1	- Ci	
AmirN All - Pre-roll / Mid-roll · Overlay / Post-Roll	± \	4a1294f4b728d	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	05/19/09 07:16 AM	06/21/10 11:01 AM	Ħ		6	
eran end		4a129492db314	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	05/19/09 07:14 AM	05/19/09 10:51 AM	H	1	- Ci	
eran mid end		4a128d6d0c165	eitan.avgil@kaltura.com	05/19/09 06:43 AM	05/19/09 06:43 AM	H	A	6	
			1 <u>2</u> <u>2</u>						

### **Different Types of Ad Servers**

There are additional ad servers that Kaltura supports, which are a bit more complex than just plugins. For example, Kaltura is now fully integrated with **DoubleClick and Freewheel**. Their integrations are more complex since there is a server-side connector that allows you to define the metadata to submit to the ad server for ad targeting purposes. The Kaltura metadata gets mapped to ad server's metadata. Then, just like with a distribution module, see Kaltura Distribution Module, when a Kaltura partner wants an entry to be included in the ad server, it is marked as such in the KMC. The ad server connector passes all of the metadata to the ad server, where the Kaltura partner can then decide how ads should be targeted based on the metadata.

# Kaltura Player Additions Related to Ads

If a Kaltura partner wants to create their own type of ad targeting and prevent pre-rolls from playing on specific entries, they can utilize the flashVar vast.preSequence=0, defined in the embed code in the additional parameters and plugins.

Advanced functionality is enabled to provide for a better workflow of ad plugins. The Kaltura Player build its UI only when the plugin is completely ready, enabling for a smooth loading of player and plugin together after the plugin is ready.

# Troubleshooting

Here are a few helpful steps to configure advertising:

For VAST ads:

1. Check that you have a working ad tag URL. Be certain that VAST 2.0., 1.0 are also supported for

the media file content.

- An example of a working ad tag URL is at: http://ox-d.hbr.org/v/1.0/av?auid=35998
- In addition to this, a very helpful site that has working VAST ad tag URLs can be found here: http://www.iab.net/iab\_products\_and\_industry\_services/508676/digitalvideo/vast/vast\_xml\_sampl es .
- Put the ad tag URL in your browser. You should see an XML that clearly shows that it is a VAST XML. Various other criteria will appear in the URL. An important tag to look for is the media file. Take the URL of the media file and make sure it plays properly.

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>

- <VAST version="2.0">
  - <MediaFiles>

<MediaFile id="74565" delivery="progressive" type="video/x-flv" width="640" height="360">http://i.cdn.openx.com/c85/c85e92f5-1481-4244-843d-41d9aa03dc88/cf2/cf25d8fab21ab337420b8e60ff8cfc00.flv</MediaFile>

If the URL is not a VAST XML or if the media file does not play properly, create a working VAST XML with a working media file on your ad server.

 If the VAST ad tag URL looks valid and the media file plays properly, the next step is to go to Fiddler. (Debugger) The first important thing to look for here is to make sure that the crossdomain is working properly. Here is a working Fiddler response:

iii Fido	ller - HTTI	P Debuggir	ng Proxy					
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit <u>R</u> ule	es <u>T</u> ools	<u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp					
Q 4 <sub>2</sub>	Reissue	🗙 🕈 🕨 Re	esume 🛛 🔹 Stream 🏭	Decode 🕀 Process Filter	🐴 Find	<u> S</u> ave	🗟 🏉 Browse	🙀 Clear C
				Web <u>S</u> essions			·	
#	Result	Protocol	Host	URL	Body	Caching	Content-Type	Process
≣ 1 ≪"2	200 200	нттр нттр		/fiddler2/updatecheck.asp /crossdomain.xml	621 205	private	text/plain application/	fiddler: firefox:

4. If the Crossdomain request/response is red or has some abnormal result like 404, you will need to enable your domain's crossdomain to allow Kaltura to access it. Here is Kaltura's crossdomain.xml, which can be provided as an example of a proper crossdomain.xml : http://www.kaltura.com/crossdomain.xml.

The next steps are to make sure that the ad is properly being called via Fiddler:

ler - HTTI	P Debuggii	ng Proxy							
dit <u>R</u> ule	es <u>T</u> ools	<u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp							
🔍 🐓 Reissue 🗙 🔹 🕨 Resume   🍁 Stream 🎬 Decode   🕀 Process Filter 🏦 Find 🔣 Save   🗟 🏈 Browse 🚸 Clear Ca									
Web Sessions									
Result	Protocol	Host	URL	Body	Caching	Content-Type			
200	HTTP	www.fiddler2.com	/fiddler2/updatecheck.asp?isBeta=False	621	private	text/plain			
200	HTTP	ox-d.hbr.org	/crossdomain.xml	205		application/			
200	HTTP	ox-d.hbr.org	/v/1.0/av?auid=35998	7,630	private	text/xml			
200	HTTP	stats.kaltura.com	//api_v3/index.php?service=stats&acti	27	max-ag	text/html; c			
200	HTTP	ox-d.hbr.org	/v/1.0/ri?ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8YXVpZD0zN	43	private	image/gif			
200	HTTP	ox-d.hbr.org	/v/1.0/rv?t=start&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8Y	43	private	image/gif			
200	HTTP	ox-d.hbr.org	/v/1.0/rv?t=resume&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ	43	private	image/gif			
200	HTTP	i.cdn.openx.com	/c85/c85e92f5-1481-4244-843d-41d9a	6,929		video/x-flv			
200	HTTP	ox-d.hbr.org	/v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2	43	private	image/gif			
200	HTTP	stats.kaltura.com	//api_v3/index.php?service=stats&acti	27	max-ag	text/html; c			
200	HTTP	stats.kaltura.com	//api_v3/index.php?service=stats&acti	27	max-ag	text/html; c			
200	HTTP	ox-d.hbr.org	/v/1.0/rv?t=midpoint&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ	43	private	image/gif			
	dit <u>R</u> ul Reissue Result 200 200 200 200 200 200 200 200 200 20	dit <u>Rules</u> <u>Tools</u> Reissue × → Re Result Protocol 200 HTTP 200 HTTP	Reissue       ★       Resume       ♣       Stream         Result       Protocol       Host         200       HTTP       www.fiddler2.com         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org         200       HTTP       stats.kaltura.com         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org         200       HTTP       stats.kaltura.com         200       HTTP       stats.kaltura.com	dit       Rules       Tools       View       Help         Reissue       ✓       Resume       ✓       Stream       Decode <i>Process Filter</i> A Find       Find         Result       Protocol       Host       URL       Web Sessions         200       HTTP       www.fiddler2.com       /fiddler2/updatecheck.asp?isBeta=False         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /crossdomain.xml         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/av?auid=35998         200       HTTP       stats.kaltura.com       //api_v3/index.php?service=stats&acti         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=start&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8YXVpZD0zN         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=resume&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8Y         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=resume&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ3Y         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2         200 </td <td>dit       Rules       ⊥ools       ⊻iew       Help         Reissue       ✓       Resume       ✓       Stream       Decode       ⊕ Process Filter       ♣ Find       Save       Image: Stream         Result       Protocol       Host       URL       Body         200       HTTP       www.fiddler2.com       /fiddler2/updatecheck.asp?isBeta=False       621         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /crossdomain.xml       205         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=start&amp;sexacti       27         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=start&amp;s=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8YXVpZD0zN       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=resume&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8Y       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2       43</td> <td>dit       Rules       ⊥ools       ⊻iew       Help         Reissue       ✓       Resume       ✓       Stream       ✓       Decode       ⊕       Process Filter       ♣       Find       Save       Image: Stream       Ø       Brow         Web Sessions         Result       Protocol       Host       URL       Body       Caching         200       HTTP       www.fiddler2.com       /fiddler2/updatecheck.asp?isBeta=False       621       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       //v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=start&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8YXVpZD0zN       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=resume&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8Y       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&amp;ts=0c2lkPTU2       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=f</td>	dit       Rules       ⊥ools       ⊻iew       Help         Reissue       ✓       Resume       ✓       Stream       Decode       ⊕ Process Filter       ♣ Find       Save       Image: Stream         Result       Protocol       Host       URL       Body         200       HTTP       www.fiddler2.com       /fiddler2/updatecheck.asp?isBeta=False       621         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /crossdomain.xml       205         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=start&sexacti       27         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=start&s=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8YXVpZD0zN       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=resume&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8Y       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2       43         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2       43	dit       Rules       ⊥ools       ⊻iew       Help         Reissue       ✓       Resume       ✓       Stream       ✓       Decode       ⊕       Process Filter       ♣       Find       Save       Image: Stream       Ø       Brow         Web Sessions         Result       Protocol       Host       URL       Body       Caching         200       HTTP       www.fiddler2.com       /fiddler2/updatecheck.asp?isBeta=False       621       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       //v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/av?auid=35998       7,630       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=start&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8YXVpZD0zN       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=resume&ts=0c2lkPTU2MzJ8Y       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=firstQuartile&ts=0c2lkPTU2       43       private         200       HTTP       ox-d.hbr.org       /v/1.0/rv?t=f			
Configuring Companion Ads

# CHAPTER 18

# **Creating and Tracking Analytics**

Use the Analytics tab to track and display analytical information for bandwidth usage, video content usage and to produce user and community reports. You can extract and analyze data from the publisher level to information for a specific user as well as from account's content level to any specific entry.

This section contains the following topics:

- Content Reports display information about the entire content of the account, for example which is the most viewed video or which videos were100% play-through.
- User and Community Reports display information about all the end-users of this account, for example who was the excel content contributor.
- Bandwidth Usage Reports provide clear visibility into the resources (storage, bandwidth) used by the publisher or the user.
- User Level Reports displays reports for a specific user (which video was watched in a given time frame and for how long) and per specific content (which users watched the video and for how long).
- Exporting Analytics to a CSV File

# **Content Reports**

Content reports display aggregated analytics showing how well your content is performing across your sites. Use the content reports to gain business insights and learn if your content discovery and exposure strategies have paid off or when things need to be tweaked to improve outreach or user engagement.

The following Content Reports are available'

- Top Content
- Content Drop-off
- Content Interactions
- Content Contributions

## **Top Content Reports**

Top Content reports display the following data for your most popular content:

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- Minutes Viewed The sum of minutes that were viewed
- Average View Time The average time calculated by dividing the minutes viewed by number of views
- Player Impressions The number of times the video player was loaded
- (Not included in the line chart) Player to Impression Ratio The number of plays divided by the number of impressions.

Content Reports Users	Dashboard Content Studio Analytics Settings Administration Upload V & Community Reports Bandwidth Usage Reports	K Atar Shadm
Top Content Content Drop-off Content Interactions Content Contributions	Top Content   Date Range:   Last 30 days   Dates:   05/07/2012   Box Details   Drop-off   Iteractions   Application:   All   Search User:	Export to CSV
	0       0	e/6/12

### To display Top Content Reports

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select Content Reports.
- 2. Click Top Content.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. Select one of the following for the Playback Context:

All (default) – uses all the categories defined in your account Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter.
   To clear the category filter, click All.
- 5. Click on the links to the video's Drop-off and Interactions reports. (See Content Drop-off Reports and Content Interactions).
- (Optional) In the Search Filter field, enter text that appears in content Names, Tags or Descriptions, and click Apply. The filter description is displayed above the report. To clear the filter, delete the text from the Search Filter field and click Apply.
- 7. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 8. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 9. In the line chart, hover over the data to display the exact data quantity for the date.

Under the line chart, a summary is followed by reports that display total and individual video results.

For the individual video table, you can:

- Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
- Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).
- Click a video name to display the Specific Entry Report for the video

## **Specific Entry Report**

Specific Entry reports display the following data for a specific entry:

- Plays- The number of times a user clicked "Play".
- Minutes Viewed The sum of minutes that were viewed
- Average View Time The average time calculated by dividing the minutes viewed by number of views
- Player Impressions The number of times the video player was loaded
- (Not included in the line chart) Player to Impression Ratio The number of plays divided by the number of impressions.

🐝 Kaltura	Dashboard Content	Studio Analytics	Settings Administration	on Upload 💙	< Atar Shadmi
Content Reports Users 8	Community Reports Bandwid	dth Usage Reports			3
Top Content Content Drop-off Content Interactions Content Contributions	Playback Context: Al Sele Basic Details Drop-off Int Application: Al Search User: Plays 80 40 20 58/12 5/10/12	6/12/12 8/14/12 8/19/12	5/18/12 5/20/12 5/22/12		Export to CSV
	The video ablack	<u>source</u> was played	0 times by 0 unique kn	own users	
	Unique Known Users	Plays (?)	Minutes Viewed ? Av	g. View Time (?) Player Impressions	Play to Impression Ratio
	0	0	0 0	00:00:00	

### To display a Specific Entry Report

- 1. Create a Top Content report. See To display Top Content Reports.
- 2. Click a video name to display the Specific Entry Report for the video.
- 3. Select one of the following for the Playback Context:

All (default) – uses all the categories defined in your account Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter.

To clear the category filter, click All.

(Optional) Click the links to the video's Drop-off and Interactions reports. (See Content Drop-off and\_Content Interactions).

- 4. Select the Application from the drop-down menu. The choices presented are the applications delivered by the publisher during playbacks.
- (Optional) In the Search User field, enter text that appears in content Names, Tags or Descriptions, and click Apply. The filter description is displayed above the report.

To clear the filter, delete the text from the Search Filter field and click Apply.

6. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.

- 7. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 8. Click on the video's Name to preview the entry.
- 9. In the line chart, hover over the data to display the exact data quantity for the date.

## **Content Drop-off Reports**

Content Drop-off reports display the following data for play-through by viewers of your content:

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- 25 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 25% of the video
- 50 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 50% of the video
- 75 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 75% of the video
- 100 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 100% of the video
- (Not included in the bar chart) Play-through Ratio The percentage of completed plays. The number of 100% play-throughs divided by the total number of plays.

Content Reports User	Dashboard Content rs & Community Reports Bandwidt	Stur th Usage Re		Settings	Administration	Upload Y	e.			
op Content Content Drop-off Content Interactions Content Contributions	Content Drop-off Date Range: Last 30 days Categories: Al Selec Search Filter:		06/06/2012	12						
	80 70 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80									Expert to CS
	Ptry 13 videos had 12.5 Ptrys	i0% av	25% Play-through	2016 Praye Jh ©	50% Pay-through		75% Play-Brough	۲		100% Play Hrough
	"" 13 videos had 12.5	i0% av		jh				۲		
	Play 13 videos had 12.5 Plays 80 Video	i0% avi	25% Play-through 16	3h (3) 25% Play-	50% Play-brough 7	3 50% Play-through	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through	100% Pay-through ( 10 190% Play-through	Pay-through Ratio     2     12.50%     Play-through Ratio
	rtes 13 videos had 12.5 Peys 80 Video The lit of bees	0% av	25% Play-through 16	3h (2) 25% Play- 0	50% Play-brough 7	(*) 50% Play-through 0	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through	100% Pey-Insugh 10 190% Play-through 0	Pay-through Rate     T     Pay-through Rate     T     Pay-through Rate     c 00%
	Prey 13 videos had 12.5 Preys 80 Video The file of Sees Math 101 - preparation	0% av Plays 22 10	25% Play-through 16	3h 25% Play- 0 0	50% Play-brough 7	(*) 50% Play-through 0 0	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through ©	100% Pey-tinsugh ( 10 10% Play-through ( 0 0	Pay-through Ratio     12,50%     Play-through Ratio     conv     conv     conv
	Pays 80 Video Shad 12.5 Pays 80 Video Tati fut Seas Mat 191 - introductor Darif & Seas	IO% ave           Image: Plays           22           10           8	25% Play-through 16	(*) (*) 25% Play- 0 0 0 0	50% Play-brough 7	© 50% Play-through 0 0 0	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through 0 0	100% Pey-Incough 10 100% Pey-Brough 0 0 0	Pay-trough Bate         3           12,50%         Pay-through Bate         3           00%         00%         3           00%         00%         3
	Preys 13 videos had 12.5 Reys 80 Video Techiol files With 12 - introductor With 12 - introductor With 12 - introductor With 12	<ul> <li>(9)</li> <li>(9)</li></ul>	25% Play-through 16	3) 25% Play- 0 0 0 0	50% Play-brough 7	(P) 50% Play-through 0 0 0	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through 0 0 0 0	100% Pey-Innugh () 10 90% Pey-Brough 0 0 2	Pay-through Ratio         (E)           12.5096         Pay-through Ratio           00%         00%           00%         00%           0.0%         0.0%           0.337%         0.337%
	Pres 13 videos had 12.5 Pays 80 Video the the Start of the Start Start of the Start Start of Start Start of Start Start of Start of Start of Start Start of Start	© Plays 22 10 8 6	25% Play-through 16	(*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*)	50% Play-brough 7	(P) 50% Play-through 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through 0 0 0 0	100% Pag-brough 10 0 0 0 2 2 0 0	Pay-through Balas (3) 12,50%           Pay-through Balas         (3)           0.05%         0.05%
	rive 13 videos had 12.5 Pays 80 Wete Tatle of teas Market Sig Bacs Bany Tatle (10) Utilig Bacs Bany Tatler (10) Utilig Bacs Bany Tatler (10)	0% ave Pays     Z2     10     8     6     6     6	25% Play-through 16	(*) 255 Play-1 0 0 0 0 2	50% Play-brough 7	<ul> <li>B0% Play-through</li> <li>C</li> <li>C</li></ul>	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	105% Pay-through () 10 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9	Pay-through Balas (3) 12,50%           Pay-through Balas         (3)           0.0%         0.0%
	Pres 13 videos had 12.5 Pers 80 Vec Mark 14 Mark 14 Bull of tes Mark 11 Bull of tes Mark 11 Bull of tes Bull of te	© Plays 22 10 8 6	25% Play-through 16	3h 25% Play- 0 0 0 0 0 0 2 2 3	50% Play-brough 7	(2) 50% Play-through 0 0 0 0 2	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through 0 0 0 0	10% Rev. 4muph () 10 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9	Pay-through lates         (2)           12,50%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%           00%         20%
	rive 13 videos had 12.5 Pays 80 Wete Tatle of teas Market Sig Bacs Bany Tatle (10) Utilig Bacs Bany Tatler (10) Utilig Bacs Bany Tatler (10)	0% ave Pays     ZZ     10     a     6     6     6	25% Play-through 16	(*) 255 Play-1 0 0 0 0 2	50% Play-brough 7	<ul> <li>B0% Play-through</li> <li>C</li> <li>C</li></ul>	75% Pay-Brough 6	75% Play-through 0 0 0 0 0 0 2	105% Pay-through () 10 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9	Pay-through Balas (3) 12,50%           Pay-through Balas         (3)           0.0%         0.0%

### To display Content Drop-off Reports

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select Content Reports.
- 2. Click Content Drop-off.
- **3.** Select a date range in the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select one of the following for the Categories

All (default) – uses all the categories defined in your account Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter. To clear the category filter, click All.
- (Optional) In the Search Filter field, enter text that appears in content Names, Tags or Descriptions, and click Apply. The filter description is displayed above the report. To clear the filter, delete the text from the Search Filter field and click Apply.

6. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.

For the individual video table, you can:

- Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
- Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).
- Click a video name to display the Specific Entry Content Drop-off Report.
- Sort the table by clicking the column headings.
- Click a video name to display:
  - o Specific Entry Content Drop-off reports for the video.

## **Specific Entry Content Drop-off Reports**

Specific Entry Content Drop-off reports display the following data for your most popular content:

- Unique Known Users Sum of unique users, for which a user ID was passed from the publisher
- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- 25 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 25% of the video
- 50 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 50% of the video
- 75 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 75% of the video
- 100 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 100% of the video
- Play-through Ratio (not one of the bar chart views) The percentage of completed plays. The number of 100% play-throughs divided by the total number of plays.

Content Reports Users	& Community Reports Bandwidth Usage Rep	orts			3
Top Content Content Drop-off Content Interactions Content Contributions	Content Drop-off >> aBlack_Source Content Drop-off Date Range: Last 30 days  Dates: Payback Context: AI Select Categories Basic Datas Copport Interactions Application: AI  Search User:	05/07/2012			
	100	25% Play-through	50% Starsbourd		Export to CSV
	Plays The video <u>"aBlack Source"</u> Unique Known Users (2) Plays			75% Play-through WIN USERS	100% Play-through

### To display a Specific Entry Content Drop-off report

- 1. Create a Content Drop-off report. See Content Drop-off Reports.
- 2. Click a video name to display the Specific Entry Content Drop-off Report for the video.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select one of the following for the Playback Context (the categories in which the movie was played from):

All (default) - uses all the categories defined in your account

Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter. To clear the category filter, click All.
- 5. Click the links to the video's Specific Entry Report and Specific Content Interactions Report.
- **6.** Select the Application from the drop-down menu. The choices presented are the applications delivered by the publisher during playbacks.
- 7. (Optional) In the Search Filter field, enter text that appears in content Names, Tags or Descriptions, and click Apply.
   The filter description is displayed above the report.
   To clear the filter, delete the text from the Search Filter field and click Apply.
- 8. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 9. Click on the video's Name to preview the entry.

## **Content Interactions Reports**

Content Interactions reports display the following data for viewer interaction with your content:

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- Edits The number of clicks on the "Edit" button
- Shares (Viral) The number of clicks on the "Share" button
- Downloads The number of clicks on the "Download" button
- Reports of Abuse The number of clicks on the "Report" button



#### To display Content Interaction Reports

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select Content Reports.
- 2. Click Content Interactions.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select one of the following for the Categories:

All (default) – uses all the categories defined in your account Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter.
   To clear the category filter, click All.
- (Optional) In the Search User field, enter text that appears in content Names, Tags or Descriptions, and click Apply.
   The filter description is displayed above the report.
   To clear the filter, delete the text from the Search Filter field and click Apply.
- 6. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 7. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 8. In the line chart, hover over data to display the exact data quantity for the date.
- 9. Click on the video's Name to preview the entry.

Under the line chart, a summary is followed by reports that display total and individual video results.

For the individual video table, you can:

- Sort the table by clicking the column headings.
- Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
- Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).
- Click a video name to display a Specific Content Interactions Report for the video.

## **Specific Content Interactions Report**

Specific Content Interactions reports display the following data for your most popular content:

- Unique Known Users Sum of unique users, for which a user ID was passed from the publisher
- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- Edits The number of clicks on the "Edit" button
- Shares (Viral) The number of clicks on the "Share" button
- Downloads The number of clicks on the "Download" button
- Reports of Abuse The number of clicks on the "Report" button

🌼 Kaltura	Dashboard Content Studio Ana	lytics Settings A	dministration Upload Y		< Atar Shadmi
Content Reports User	s & Community Reports Bandwidth Usage Reports				(
Top Content Content Drop-off Content Interactions Content Contributions	Content Interactions >> aBlack_Source Content Interactions Date Range: Last 30 days  Dates: 05/07/2012 [2] Playback Context: All Select Categories Basic Details Drop-off Interactions Application: All  Search User: Plays 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	到 06/06/2012 [] []			Export to CSV
	40 - 20	-		6/28/12 6/30/12 6/1/12 6/3	

### To display a Specific Content Interactions report

- 1. Create a Content Interaction Report. See Content Interaction Reports.
- 2. Click a video name to display the Specific Content Interaction Report for the video
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu.
- 4. Select one of the following for the Playback Context (the categories in which the movie was played from):

All (default) – uses all the categories defined in your account Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter. To clear the category filter, click All.
- Click the links to display the Specific Entry Report for the video and the Specific Entry Content Drop-off Report.
- **5.** Select the Application from the drop-down menu. The choices presented are the applications delivered by the publisher during playbacks.
- 6. (Optional) In the Search Filter field, enter text that appears in content Names, Tags or Descriptions, and click Apply. The filter description is displayed above the report. To clear the filter, delete the text from the Search Filter field and click Apply.
- 7. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 8. Click a video name to display the entry's preview.

## **Content Contributions Report**

The Content Contributions reports display the following data for media entry contributions by your users:

- Total The number of media entries contributed, including video, audio, image and mix.
- Video The number of video entries contributed.
- Audio The number of audio entries contributed.
- Image The number of image entries contributed.
- Mix The number of mixes created.
- (Not included in the individual source table) UGC The number of media entries contributed by "User"-type users
- (Not included in the individual source table) Admin The number of media entries contributed by "Admin"-type users that includes all uploads from the KMC.



### To display Content Contribution reports

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select Content Reports.
- 2. Click Content Contributions.
- **3.** Select a date range in the drop-down menu.
- 4. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 5. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 6. In the line chart, hover over data to display the exact data quantity for the date.

Under the line chart, a summary is followed by reports that display total and individual results.

For the individual video table, you can:

- Sort the table by clicking the column headings.
- Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
- Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).
- Click a source name to display a Specific Entry Media Source Contributions Report for the source.

## **Specific Entry Media Source Contributions Report**

Specific Entry Media Source Contributions reports display the following data for your most popular content:

- Total- number of media entries contributed, includes, video, audio, images and mixes
- Video- Number of video entries contributed
- Audio Number of audio entries contributed
- Image Number of image entries contributed
- Mix Number of mixes created
- UGC Number of media entries created by users that are type User (not admin)
- Admin Number of media entries created by users that are type admin this includes all uploads via KMC

🔅 Kaltura	Dashboard	Content	Studio	Analytics	Settings	Administration	Upload 💙			< Debbie
Content Reports Us	ers & Community Re	eports Bandwidth	Usage Reports							?
Top Content Content Drop-off Content Interactions Content Contributions		Contributio	ns Dates: 05/07	7/201 🔟 06/06	v201					
	Search User:									
	Total	~	]						Ex	port to CSV
	6 - 6 - 4 - 3 - 2 - 1 - 0 - 577/12	5/9/12 5/11/12	5/13/12	5/15/12 5/17/	12 5/19/12	5/21/12 5/23/12	5/25/12	6/27/12 5/29/12 5	/31/12 8/2/12 8/4/12	8/8/12
	Total	? Vide	0	Audio	?	Image (	?) Mix	I UGC	Admin	?
	12	11		0		1	0	12	0	

#### To display a Entry Media Source Contributions report

- 1. Create a Content Contributions report. See To display Content Contribution Reports.
- 2. Click a video name to display the Specific Entry Media Source Contributions Report for the video
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 5. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 6. In the line chart, hover over the data to display the exact data quantity for the date.

# **User and Community Reports**

User and Community reports display demographics and User Generated Content related reports of where content was contributed, played and shared.

- Total The number of media entries contributed, including video, audio, image and mix
- Video The number of video entries contributed
- Audio The number of audio entries contributed
- Image The number of image entries contributed
- Mix The number of mixes created

# **Top Contributors Report**



### **To view Top Contributors Reports**

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select User and Community Reports.
- 2. Click Top Contributors.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 5. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 6. In the line chart, hover over the data to display the exact data quantity for the date.

Under the line chart, a summary is followed by reports that display total and individual contributor results.

For the individual contributor table, you can:

- Sort the table by clicking the column headings.
- Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
- Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).

## **Geographic Distribution Reports**

Geographic Distribution reports display the following data for play-through according to the geographic location of your content viewers:

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- 25 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 25% of the video
- 50 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 50% of the video
- 75 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 75% of the video
- 100 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 100% of the video
- Play-through Ratio The percentage of completed plays. The number of 100% play-throughs divided by the total number of plays.

#### Creating and Tracking Analytics

Content Reports	Dashboard (	Content Studio Bandwidth Usage Reports		Settings Admir	nistration Upload Y		< Atar Shadm
Top Contributors Geographic Distribution Top Syndications	Geographic D		3/2012 TS 06/02/2012	180 15			
User Engagement	10 plays came	e from 1 geogra	ohic regions				Export to CSV
	Plays	25% Play-throug	gh 🕐 50% Pl	ay-through 🕐	75% Play-through (?)	100% Play-through (?	Play-through Ratio ?
	10	6	7		6	4	40.00%
	Region	Plays	<ul> <li>25% Play-through</li> </ul>	50% Play-thr	ough 75% Play-throug	h 100% Play-through	Play-through Ratio
		10	6	7	6	4	40.00%

#### **To view Geographic Distribution reports**

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select User and Community Reports.
- 2. Click Geographic Distribution.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File. A summary is followed by reports that display total and individual regional results. For the individual regional table, you can:
- Sort the table by clicking the column headings.
- Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
- Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).
- Click a region name to display:
  - Geographic Distribution reports for the region's zones (for example, state, province, district or city)
  - The date range options for the reports. Specific Geographic Region Distribution Report

Specific Geographic region Distribution reports display the following data for play-through for a specific geographic location of your content viewers:

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- 25 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 25% of the video
- 50 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 50% of the video
- 75 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 75% of the video
- 100 per cent play-through The number of plays that reached 100% of the video
- Play-through Ratio The percentage of completed plays. The number of 100% play-throughs divided by the total number of plays.

#### To display a Specific Geographic Region Distribution report

- 1. Create a Geographic Distribution report. See To display Geographic Distribution Reports.
- 2. Click on Region name to display the Specific Geographic Region Distribution Report for the

video.

3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.

## **Top Syndications**

Top Syndications reports display the following data for the most popular syndicators of your content:

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- Minutes Viewed The sum of minutes that were viewed
- Average View Time The average time calculated by dividing the minutes viewed by the number of views
- Player Impressions The number of times the video player was loaded
- (Not included in the line chart) Player to Impression Ratio The number of plays divided by the number of impressions.



### To display Top Syndication reports

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select User and Community Reports.
- 2. Click Top Syndications.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 5. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File. For the individual syndicator table, you can:
  - o Sort the table by clicking the column headings.
  - Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
  - Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).
  - Click on a Syndicator to display the Specific Syndicator Reports.

## **Specific Syndicator Reports**

Specific Syndicator reports display the following data for the most popular syndicators of your content:

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- Minutes Viewed The sum of minutes that were viewed
- Average View Time The average time calculated by dividing the minutes viewed by the number of views
- Player Impressions The number of times the video player was loaded
- (Not included in the line chart) Player to Impression Ratio The number of plays divided by the number of impressions.

t Reports User		ontent Bandwidth Usag	Studio Analy ge Reports	ytics Set	tings Admir	nistration	× Atar Shadmi (Logout)	Account: kaitur (	(Change Account )   U	lser Manual   Supp
iributors hic Distribution lications	Top Syndications >> devi <b>Top Syndicatic</b> Date Range: Last 30 day	ons	ates: 05/07/2012	06/06/2012	2000 15					
agement										Export to CSV
	Plays	3	Minutes Viewed	3	Avg. View Time	٢	Player Impressions	٢	Play to Impression Rat	• ?
	Plays 10	٢	Minutes ∨iewed .95	3	Avg. View Time	3	Player Impressions	3	Play to Impression Rati 8.93%	• ?
	10 Syndicator	? Play:	.95	<ul> <li>Minutes Vi</li> </ul>	00:00:05	? Avg. View Time	112	Pressions		
	10	Play	.95		00:00:05		112		8.93%	
	10 Syndicator	Play	.95 s ests.keitura.co.cc	✓ Minutes Vi	00:00:05	Avg. View Time	112 Player Im		8.93% Play to Impres	
	10 Syndicator	Play: devte local	.95 s ests.keitura.co.cc	<ul> <li>Minutes Vi</li> <li>3</li> </ul>	00:00:05	Avg. View Time	112 Player Im 00:00:04		8.93% Play to Impres	
	10 syndicator til 2 til 5	Play: devte local	.95 s ests.kaitura.co.cc host	<ul> <li>Minutes Vi</li> <li>3</li> <li>1</li> </ul>	00:00:05	Avg. View Time 23 .06	112 Player Im 00:00:04 00:00:03		8.93% Play to Impres	
	<b>10</b> <u>syndicator</u> 億 2 億 5 億 9	Play: devte local proje	.95 s ests.kaitura.co.cc host	<ul> <li>Minutes Vi</li> <li>3</li> <li>1</li> <li>2</li> </ul>	00:00:05	Avg. View Time 23 .06 .08	Player Im           00:00:04           00:00:03           00:00:02		8.93% Play to Impres 24 8 3	

#### To display a Specific Syndicator report

- 1. Create a Top Syndication report. See Top Syndication Reports.
- 2. Click on a syndicator to display the Specific Syndicator Reports.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.

## **User Engagement Reports**

User Engagement reports display the following data for the most:

- Unique Known Users - Sum of unique users, for which a user ID was passed from the publisher
- Unique Videos - Sum of unique entries that had at least 1 player impression or 1 play in the given timeframe
- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play".
- Minutes Viewed The sum of minutes that were viewed.
- Average View Time The average time calculated by dividing the minutes viewed by the number of views.
- Player Impressions The number of times the video player was loaded.
- Player to Impression Ratio The number of plays divided by the number of impressions.

Kaltura	Dashboard Content	Studio Analyt	ks Settings A	dministration Upload				
Content Reports	& Community Reports Bandw	vidth Usage Reports						۲
Top Contributors	User Engagement							1
Geographic Distribution	Date Range Last 30 days	▼ Dates: 06/08/2012	07/07/2012					
Top Syndications	Playback Context: All Se	Nect Categories						
User Engagement								
	Application At							
	Search User:							
	Plays	*						Export to CSV
	40		Λ					
	20		/ \					
	20 -							
	10 -	$\wedge$						
	0 -				-			7/4/12 7/0/12 7/0/12 7/7/12
					a basia basia basia ba	ante marrie babrie babrie i	navia mina navia para.	tinte tinte tinte tinte
	28 videos were pla	ayed 80 times by 3	unique known user	S				
	Unique Known Users 🛞	Unique Videos 🕐	Bays 🕐	titutes Vewed (3)	Avg. View Time 🛞	Avg. View Drop-off	Payer Inpressions (2)	Pay to Impression Radio 🕐
	3	28	80	3.46	00:00:02	12.19%	200	40.00%
	Kame	Unique Videos ~	Plays	Minutes Viewed	Avg. View Time	Avg. View Drop-off	Player Impressions	Play to Impression Ratio
	joe user@email.com	26	21	2.03	00.00.05	27.38%	134	15.67%
	jase doegdoniais core	0	58	1.43	00.00:01	6.90%	85	80.23%
	anith mail.gmail.com	2	1	0	00.00:00	0.00%	1	100.00%
-								

### To display User Engagement reports

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select User and Community Reports.
- 2. Click User Engagement.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. Select one of the following for the Playback Context:

All (default) – uses all the categories defined in your account Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter. To clear the category filter, click All.
- **5.** Select the Application from the drop-down menu. The choices presented are the applications delivered by the publisher during playbacks.
- 6. (Optional) In the Search User field, enter text that appears in content Names, Tags or Descriptions, and click Apply.
   The filter description is displayed above the report.
   To clear the filter, delete the text from the Search Filter field and click Apply.
- 7. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 8. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.
- 9. In the line chart, hover over the data to display the exact data quantity for the date.

Under the line chart, a summary is followed by reports that display total and individual user engagement results.

For the individual video table, you can:

- Scroll through the pages at the bottom of the table.
- Select the number of rows to display per page (10 to 500).
- Click a Unique Known User to display:
  - The Specific User Engagement Report for the video

## **Specific User Engagement Report**

The Specific User Engagement report displays the following data for a specific user.

- Plays The number of times a user clicked "Play"
- Minutes Viewed The sum of minutes that were viewed
- Average View Time The average time calculated by dividing the minutes viewed by the number of views
- Player Impressions The number of times the video player was loaded
- (Not included in the line chart) Player to Impression Ratio The number of plays divided by the number of impressions.

#### To display the Specific User Engagement Report

- 1. Create a User Engagement Report. See To display User Engagement reports.
- 2. Click on a Unique Know n User.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. Select one of the following for the Playback Context:

All (default) – uses all the categories defined in your account Select Categories – uses selected categories in your account for filtering report data

- In the Categories window: Select the name of a category. Use the CTRL key to select multiple categories.
- Click Filter.
   To clear the category filter, click All.
- 5. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.

# **Bandwidth Usage Reports**

Bandwidth usage reports include helpful information about resources the publisher has been using for their account

## **Publisher Bandwidth and Storage Report**

The Publisher Bandwidth and Storage report presents the bandwidth and storage used in the account level.

The report displays the following data:

- Bandwidth Consumption the amount of consumed bandwidth in the given timeframe.
- Average storage the average storage used in the given timeframe.
- Peak Storage the highest storage consumed in the given timeframe.
- Added storage the storage change (added or removed) in the given timeframe.
- Combined Bandwidth and Consumption the sum of the average storage and bandwidth consumption.

Bandwidth & Storage Report           Date Range:         Last 30 days         Time Units:         Monthly         Dates:         05/03/2012         III         06/02/2012         III	ontent Reports User	s & Community Reports Bandwidth Usage Rep	ports			
					12 (MA)	
						Export to CSV
		7 - 6 -				$\wedge$
		4				
		1				
			5/10/12 5/12/12	5/14/12 5/16/12 5/1	8/12 5/20/12 5/22/12 5/24/	12 5/28/12 5/28/12 5/30/12 8/1/12
		Bandwidth Consumption	?	Storage Used	? Comb	bined bandwidth and storage consumption
Bandwidth Consumption ? Storage Used ? Combined bandwidth and storage consumption ?		765 MB		88 MB	85	2 MB
		Date	Bandwidth Con	sumption v	Storage Used	Combined bandwidth and storage consumption
765 MB 88 MB 852 MB		April 2012	757 MB		88 MB	844 MB
765 MB     88 MB     852 MB       Date     Bandwidth Consumption     Storage Used     Combined bandwidth and storage consumption						

### To display the Publisher Bandwidth and Storage report

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select Bandwidth Usage Reports.
- 2. Click Publisher Bandwidth and Storage Report.
- 3. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 4. Select the Time Units: Monthly or daily. The report displays the total amount of bandwidth in gigabytes used on each day of the month you selected, or the total amount of bandwidth in gigabytes used in each month of the year you selected.
- 5. Hover over a day's or month's data to display the exact usage for the day/month.
- 6. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 7. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.

## **End Users Storage Report**

The End Users Storage Report displays the amount of storage end-users used.

The report displays the following data:

- Added entries Sum of added entries owned by the user in the given timeframe.
- Total Entries Sum of entries owned by the user.
- Added Disk Space Total added disk space of the user owned entries in the given timeframe.
- Total Disk Space Total disk space of the user owned entries.
- Added Minutes Total duration of the entries owned by the user that was added in the given timeframe.
- Total Minutes Total duration of the entries owned by the user.

#### Creating and Tracking Analytics

Content Reports Use	rs & Community Reports Band	width Usage Reports					
Publisher Bandwidth & Storage Report End User Storage Report	End User Storag Date Range: Last 30 days	e Report Time Units: Daily	v Dates: 06/01/2012	15 06/30/2012 15			
	Added Entries	-					Export to CSV
	8 -		Λ				
	6 -		/ \				
	4 -		/ \			$\sim$	
	2		/ \		$\wedge$		
	0		/				
	6/1/12 6/3/12	8/5/12 8/7/12 8/9	12 6/11/12 6/13/	12 8/15/12 8/17/1	2 6/19/12 6/2	1/12 6/23/12 6/25/12	8/27/12 8/29/12
	Added Entries		Added Disk Space (	MB) 🕐 Total Disk Sj	pace (MB)	Added Minutes	Total Minutes ?
	20	4	180	70	3	35:22	17:51
	User Name	Added Entries v	Total Entries	Added Disk Space (MB)	Total Disk Space (MB)	Added Minutes	Total Minutes
	aviya.muallem@kaltura.com	2	2	28	28	6:06	6:06
	shahar danos@kaltura.com	1	1	3	3	0:19	0:19

### To display the End User Storage report

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select Publisher and Bandwidth Usage Reports.
- 2. Click End Users Storage Report.
- 3. Click on a user name to display the Storage Report for a Specific User.
- 4. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 5. Select the Time Units: Monthly or daily. The report displays the total amount of bandwidth in gigabytes used on each day of the month you selected, or the total amount of bandwidth in gigabytes used in each month of the year you selected.
- 6. Hover over a day's or month's data to display the exact usage for the day/month.
- 7. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 8. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.

## Storage Report for a Specific User

The Storage Report for a Specific User displays the amount of storage a specific user used

The report displays the following data:

- Added entries Sum of added entries owned by the user in the given timeframe
- Total Entries Sum of entries owned by the user
- Added Disk Space Total added disk space of the user owned entries in the given timeframe
- Total Disk Space Total disk space of the user owned entries
- Added Minutes Total duration of the entries owned by the user, that were added in the given timeframe
- Total Minutes Total duration of the entries owned by the user.

#### Creating and Tracking Analytics

Content Reports Users a	Community Reports	ndwidth Usage Reports					
Publisher Bandwidth & Storage Report End User Storage Report	End User Storage Report >= End User Storag Date Range: Last 30 days	ge Report	<b>v</b> Dates: 06/01/2012	(15) 06/30/2012 (15)			
	Added Disk Space (MB)	-					Export to CSV
	400				$\wedge$	<b>\</b>	
	100				$\sim$		
	-100			$\backslash$	- V		
	-200			$\setminus$			
	-400 -  8/1/12 8/3/12	8/5/12 8/7/12	8/8/12 6/11/12 6/1	3/12 8/15/12 8/17/	12 6/19/12 6/21/12	8/23/12 8/25/12	8/27/12 8/29/12
	Added Entries	<ul> <li>Total Entries</li> </ul>	Added Disk Space	MB) 🕐 Total Disk Sp	ace (MB) ? Added	d Minutes 🥐	Total Minutes ?
	2	2	28	28	6:0	6	6:06
	Date	? Added Entries 🗸 🗸	Total Entries	Added Disk Space (MB)	Total Disk Space (MB)	Added Minutes	Total Minutes
	06/01/2012	0	0	0	0	0:00	0:00

#### To display the Storage Report for a Specific user

- 1. Select the Analytics tab and then select Bandwidth Usage Reports.
- 2. Click End Users Storage Report.
- 3. Click on a user name to display the Storage Report for a Specific User.
- 4. Select a date range in the drop-down menu or enter dates in the Dates field.
- 5. Select the Time Units: Monthly or daily.

The report displays the total amount of bandwidth in gigabytes used on each day of the month you selected, or the total amount of bandwidth in gigabytes used in each month of the year you selected.

- 6. Hover over a day's or month's data to display the exact usage for the day/month.
- 7. In the drop-down menu, select one of the data types for the line chart report.
- 8. (Optional) Export the line chart report to a CSV file. See Exporting Analytics to a CSV File.

## **Date Ranges for Analytical Reports**

You can specify the date range for each analytical report you generate.

The date ranges are:

- Yesterday
- Last 7 days
- This week
- Last week
- Last 30 days (default)
- This month
- Last month
- Last 12 months
- This year
- Custom: Click the calendar icons to specify a range.

# **Exporting Analytics to a CSV File**

- To export a report to a CSV file
- 1. Click Export to CSV on the top right of the line chart. A message is displayed: "The file is ready for download".
- 2. Click OK to proceed.
- 3. Select a location and file name for the CSV file, and click Save.

## **Sending Analytics Events to Third Parties**

After you create a Kaltura Player,, you can configure third party plug-ins to view analytics information.

## Kaltura Player Supported Plug-ins

The following lists some of the third party plug-ins supported by the Kaltura Player.

- Google
- Omniture
- Nielson
- Comscore



**NOTE:** When you create a player through the **Studio** tab in the KMC, the Kaltura Analytics configuration is automatically included

All other plug-ins must be added manually. For more information about using third party Analytics providers see Configuring Third Party Analytics Provider Plug-ins. To learn how to implement a player plugin that sends Analytics data to third-party servers, contact Kaltura.

## CHAPTER 19

# **Account Information**

This section describes the following topics:

- Account Settings
- Integration Settings
- Access Control
- Transcoding Settings
- Custom Data
- My User Settings
- Account Upgrade

# **Account Settings**

The Account Settings information includes the data you submitted during the registration process and is accessed through the **Settings** tab. You can change or update any of the details in this section. Multiple content categories can be selected by holding down the CTRL key.

To view your account information

• Select the Settings tab and then select the Account Settings tab.

🌼 Kaltura	Dashboard	Content	Studio	Ar	nalytics	Settings	Ac	Iministration
Account Settings In	tegration Settings	Access Control	Transcoding	Settings	Custom Data	My User S	ettings	Account Upgrade
Account Info								
Please make sure that the i	nformation below is up	to date.						
Partner ID:	745771							
Name of Publisher / Con	npany * Kaltura Wri	ters Team						
Name of Account Owner	* Kaltura W	riters Team	~					
Email of Account Owner	zohar.babir	@kaltura.com						
Phone *	646241658	0						
Website	http://corp.	kaltura.com						
Describe Yourself	Other		•					
* Required Fields								
		Si	ave Changes					
		_						

The following table describes the fields for account information.

Field	Description
Partner ID	Your Kaltura Publisher Account id. This id is required in every call to the Kaltura API.
Name of Publisher/Company-	This field contains the name of your organization.
Name of Account Owner	The user who created the KMC account and is the recipient of account level email communication. The drop-down menu lists the names of all users of the KMC account who are associated with the 'Publisher Administrator' role
	(Full permission to account's KMC functionalities), so it is possible to set a different account owner, when needed.

# **Integration Settings**

This tab displays the Integration settings for the KMC. Integration settings contain the information that provides unique IDs to Kaltura, including your partner ID, which is your site's identification and ticket to the Kaltura platform and API. Your Partner ID enables you to connect to Kaltura, display media, upload media and experience all of Kaltura's functionality.

## Account Info

The account info displays account information. The Partner ID is your Kaltura account identification number. The Sub Partner ID is generally deprecated and kept for backward compatibility of older Kaltura based applications.

The Administrator Secret and User Secret are the API private keys used to generate authentication tokens for sessions with the Kaltura servers when using the API. Since the keys can be used to run API commands on your content in Kaltura, you should keep these secret. Usually, the user secret is enough for all activities and therefore this is the key that should be provided to parties wishing to access your Kaltura account via API. The Admin Secret can be used to login as an administrator, and therefore can be used to perform any action on your account.

For more information, please refer to the Kaltura API documentation.

Account Info		
Partner ID:	745771	
Sub Partner ID:	74577100	
Administrator Secret:	206ad31744fc52bd8524c581fb595c47	
Jser Secret:	5b773e230dd12426342a51fa02bc4f20	
		☆ Advanced Settings

- To view additional low-level account settings information
- Click **Advanced Settings** to open the advanced Account Settings display. Changing the advanced settings will take effect only for new content ingested (from the moment changes have been saved) and is not retroactive.

## **Entitlement Settings**

Entitlement settings may be added to categories integrated in applications to support content entitlement.

From the Integration Settings page you control to which categories in your account, entitlement settings are added and enforced. See Managing Content Entitlement for more information.

The Entitlement Settings option in the Integration Settings page is available with entitlement account configuration only.

### **Adding Entitlement to Categories**

Use the "Privacy Context" to add entitlement to categories.

Privacy Context is a free text label that indicates to which application the entitlement settings apply, for example, "MediaSpace" .The Privacy Context label is used for specific indexing of categories and content associated with it, and should also be configured in the application session (KS) itself. The Privacy Context configuration for an application guarantees the following:

- User's entitlements to content in the application are determined based on the specific categories the application is integrated with.
- Categories that are not directly integrated with the application can be used for any content organization and applicative classification purposes. A content item can be shared with such categories with no impact on their visibility to end-users through the application.

In the common case, a single Privacy Context should be set to an entire 'branch' within the category-tree, and indicate the application integrated with it.

In more complex scenarios, multiple privacy contexts can be set to categories to enable access to content shared between multiple applications within the account, and under the same organizational context.



**NOTE:** The Privacy Context is set to categories as part of the MediaSpace installation process. Following this configuration, the MediaSpace categories can be edited to include entitlements settings.

For any other purposes, entitlements and privacy context can be added to categories from the Integration Settings page in the KMC.

#### To add entitlements to categories

- 1. Select the Settings tab and then select Integration Settings.
- 2. In the Entitlement Settings sections click Add Entitlements to Categories.

#### Entitlement Settings

The Entitlement Settings are set as part of the MediaSpace installation. For other purposes: To add entitlement settings for categories select the root category integrated with your application and label it below.

Note: The Privacy Context Label of each category defined here, will be automatically applied to its sub categories. The same label should be set as part of the application's session (KS) privileges. Read More

Application's Root Category	Privacy Context Labels	Actions
MediaSpaceRootCategory	MediaSpace1	Change 🗙 Remove

- 3. Enter the name of the root category integrated with your application/s.
- 4. Enter the privacy context label. Multiple labels can be separated by commas. In MediaSpace, the privacy context label is visible through the MediaSpace configuration panel.

Add Entitlements To Categories	98
Category Name	
MediaSpaceRootCategory ×	
Privacy Context Labels	
MediaSpace1	
Save Cancel	

5. Click Save.

Following this action the categories tree is updated in the Kaltura backend, and the privacy

context is gradually propagated into all sub categories. This operation may take a few minutes.



**NOTE:** If entitlement enforcement is enabled by default in your account, after you complete this step, all content under the category that was set with entitlements (including all sub-categories) will only be accessible through an application that was updated to work with Kaltura's entitlement services and that is set with the defined privacy context label as part of its session privileges.

## **Notifications**

When creating Kaltura applications or integrating various Kaltura features into existing applications or sites, it is often required that the application be notified of various actions that occurred in Kaltura. For example: When a user on your site uploads a new video file, you might want your site code to be notified of when Kaltura has finished processing the video file and made it ready for publishing.

While it is possible to easily query the Kaltura API periodically, Kaltura's API Notifications utilize a "push" methodology where a code on your site will be called automatically by Kaltura whenever a certain actions occur like video upload or media status changes.

Kaltura provide two types of Notifications:

- Kaltura Client Notifications Notifications that are sent from the Kaltura widget (e.g. Kaltura Contribution Wizard) when a user performs an action like uploading a new video file. The notification will be called from the Kaltura widget directly to the publisher's notification handler code hosted on the publisher's server.
- Kaltura Server Notifications Notifications that are sent from the Kaltura server to the publisher's server using http post requests. The publisher is expected to host a notification handler script on his server, to which the Kaltura server will call providing information about the actions that occurred.

#### To setup client and/or server notifications

- 1. Enter the Notification URL.
- 2. Select the type of notifications from the displayed list.

)o you want to receive server notifica	tions? 🔘 Yes 🔵 No			
Inter Notification URL:		Pin	g URL	
Notification Name		Sent by Client	Sent by Server	
		Sent by Client	Sent by Server	
Notification Name Add Entry Update Entry Permissions			Sent by Server	
Add Entry Update Entry Permissions				
Add Entry Update Entry Permissions Delete Entry				
Add Entry				
Add Entry Update Entry Permissions Delete Entry Block Entry				

For more information about the various notifications and how to implement a notification handler script on your server, refer to: http://www.kaltura.com/api\_v3/testmeDoc/index.php?page=notifications

# **Access Control**

See Access Control Profiles for more information.

# **Transcoding Settings**

See Editing and Creating Transcoding Profiles for more information.

# **Custom Data**

See Kaltura Custom Metadata Functionality more information.

# **My User Settings**

All KMC admin users can change their personal details - name, email address (KMC login) and password from the My User Setting page.

### To change personal details

- 1. Select the Settings tab and then select My User Settings.
- 2. Click on Edit to modify the information.

For authentication purposes, you will need to provide your current password before being able to make any changes in the system.

#### **To change your password**

- 1. Select the Settings tab and then select My User Settings.
- 2. Click on Change KMC Password to modify the information.

# **Account Upgrade**

To learn more and upgrade your account, fill in the online form and our Sales Team will contact you.

#### To upgrade your account

- 1. Select the Administration tab and then select Users.
- 2. Click on "Click Here" or go to http://site.kaltura.com/Request-Users.html to upgrade your account.